[Table of Contents](file:///D:\\TMP\\finance-docx\\Dell\\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html" \l "s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**UNITED STATES**

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

**Washington, D.C. 20549**

**Form 10-Q**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| (Mark One) |  |  |  |  |
| ☑ |  | **QUARTERLY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934** | | |
|  |  | **For the quarterly period ended** | **August 2, 2019** |  |
| **or** | | | | |
| ☐ |  | **TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES**  **EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934** | | |
| **For the transition period from            to** | | | | |

**Commission File Number: 001-37867**

**Dell Technologies Inc.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | | |
|  |  |  |
| **Delaware** |  | **80-0890963** |
| (State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization) |  | (I.R.S. Employer Identification No.) |

**One Dell Way, Round Rock, Texas 78682**

(Address of principal executive offices) (Zip Code)

**1-800-289-3355**

(Registrant’s telephone number, including area code)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | | |
|  |  |  |
| Title of each class | Trading Symbol(s) | Name of each exchange on which registered |
| **Class C Common Stock, par value of $0.01 per share** | **DELL** | **New York Stock Exchange** |

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes þNo ¨

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit such files). Yes þNo ¨

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of “large accelerated filer,” “accelerated filer,” “smaller reporting company,” and “emerging growth company” in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Large accelerated filer | þ |  |  | Accelerated filer | ¨ |
| Non-accelerated filer | ¨ |  |  | Smaller reporting company | ☐ |
|  |  |  |  | Emerging growth company | ☐ |

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. ¨

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes ☐No þ

As of September 3, 2019, there were 724,649,156 shares of the registrant’s common stock outstanding, consisting of 231,577,113 outstanding shares of Class C Common Stock, 373,736,005 outstanding shares of Class A Common Stock, and 119,336,038 outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock.

1

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

This report contains “forward-looking statements” within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933 and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. The words “may,” “will,” “anticipate,” “estimate,” “expect,” “intend,” “plan,” “aim,” “seek,” and similar expressions as they relate to us or our management are intended to identify these forward-looking statements. All statements by us regarding our expected financial position, revenues, cash flows and other operating results, business strategy, legal proceedings, and similar matters are forward-looking statements. Our expectations expressed or implied in these forward-looking statements may not turn out to be correct. Our results could be materially different from our expectations because of various risks, including the risks discussed in “Part I — Item 1A — Risk Factors” in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended February 1, 2019 and in our other periodic and current reports filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”). Any forward-looking statement speaks only as of the date as of which such statement is made, and, except as required by law, we undertake no obligation to update any forward-looking statement after the date as of which such statement was made, whether to reflect changes in circumstances or our expectations, the occurrence of unanticipated events, or otherwise.

2

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | | |
|  |  |  |
|  |  | **Page** |
| [**PART I — FINANCIAL INFORMATION**](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s80A4C4FACBBE5D09ACD5210DAD94FF9E) | | |
| [Item 1.](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s005EAFBD7E6E53A9BDDDEA6EA912BD70) | [Financial Statements (unaudited)](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s005EAFBD7E6E53A9BDDDEA6EA912BD70) | [4](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s005EAFBD7E6E53A9BDDDEA6EA912BD70) |
| [Item 2.](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s8FD7B30BD85B5004B6F9475C1C452FA4) | [Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s8FD7B30BD85B5004B6F9475C1C452FA4) | [67](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s8FD7B30BD85B5004B6F9475C1C452FA4) |
| [Item 3.](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s59F3385009DC5AD5BA8971D8E7083351) | [Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s59F3385009DC5AD5BA8971D8E7083351) | [95](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s59F3385009DC5AD5BA8971D8E7083351) |
| [Item 4.](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sD9C0D0ADC7815058985E614FE8473388) | [Controls and Procedures](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sD9C0D0ADC7815058985E614FE8473388) | [96](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sD9C0D0ADC7815058985E614FE8473388) |
| [**PART II — OTHER INFORMATION**](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s60996CC398C9543CA9AA002269E15F0C) | | |
| [Item 1.](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sD9D132DA8E37593FA42D3C0C75F9BBB5) | [Legal Proceedings](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sD9D132DA8E37593FA42D3C0C75F9BBB5) | [97](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sD9D132DA8E37593FA42D3C0C75F9BBB5) |
| [Item 1A.](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0D9D93A981E0539AA33FDA1883FA8303) | [Risk Factors](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0D9D93A981E0539AA33FDA1883FA8303) | [97](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0D9D93A981E0539AA33FDA1883FA8303) |
| [Item 2.](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sF2FF1995CECA5576BA485321DC3F3937) | [Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities and Use of Proceeds](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sF2FF1995CECA5576BA485321DC3F3937) | [98](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sF2FF1995CECA5576BA485321DC3F3937) |
| [Item 6.](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s86DF41195A735821A8A82668114EB899) | [Exhibits](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s86DF41195A735821A8A82668114EB899) | [99](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s86DF41195A735821A8A82668114EB899) |
| [Signatures](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s4B7BB1331D37589CAE22497BD5989AF1) |  | [100](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s4B7BB1331D37589CAE22497BD5989AF1) |

3

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**PART I — FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

**ITEM 1 *—* FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (UNAUDITED)**

**Index**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  | |
|  |  |
|  | **Page** |
| [Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position as of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s53C1B7C4A69153E2A2775F67101BDA23) | [5](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s53C1B7C4A69153E2A2775F67101BDA23) |
| [Condensed Consolidated Statements of Income (Loss) for the three and six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s01AD970A4A9158BCA6A7516E4069D2D5) | [6](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s01AD970A4A9158BCA6A7516E4069D2D5) |
| [Condensed Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss) for the three and six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sDB97BFA0EBB25DB89084F00F68F08C33) | [7](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sDB97BFA0EBB25DB89084F00F68F08C33) |
| [Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sD003C7250E9454F88B3EC4D2EDB696B7) | [8](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sD003C7250E9454F88B3EC4D2EDB696B7) |
| [Condensed Consolidated Statements of Stockholders’ Equity (Deficit) for the three and six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s45c18af9dd914e109ed15062fddd5652) | [10](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s45c18af9dd914e109ed15062fddd5652) |
| [Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s12E0DF2947585160A403552D601903B2) | [14](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s12E0DF2947585160A403552D601903B2) |
| [Note 1 — Basis of Presentation](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s79E244F0C2465EA7B6993D4C9B270019) | [14](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s79E244F0C2465EA7B6993D4C9B270019) |
| [Note 2 — Interim Update to Summary of Significant Accounting Policies](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0545BBBC179457D3BC939134E214D7A8) | [16](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0545BBBC179457D3BC939134E214D7A8) |
| [Note 3 — Fair Value Measurements and Investments](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sA476211BA4A7528EA902310DD3F469DE) | [19](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sA476211BA4A7528EA902310DD3F469DE) |
| [Note 4 — Financial Services](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s30F52939FA0D541A9D869BBC534F928D) | [21](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s30F52939FA0D541A9D869BBC534F928D) |
| [Note 5 — Leases](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sA4639C849519515B92EF4586EE63C9AE) | [29](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sA4639C849519515B92EF4586EE63C9AE) |
| [Note 6 — Debt](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s620EA55F5A945358B8EF8331598FC3E8) | [31](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s620EA55F5A945358B8EF8331598FC3E8) |
| [Note 7 — Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sA0F2A7ADF2325E8086C2D3CD9B034330) | [37](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sA0F2A7ADF2325E8086C2D3CD9B034330) |
| [Note 8 — Goodwill and Intangible Assets](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0CC67D98E9D35246BD92B477335C9FCB) | [42](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0CC67D98E9D35246BD92B477335C9FCB) |
| [Note 9 — Deferred Revenue](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sBAD0E6A644685E5F804DC166909574D5) | [45](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sBAD0E6A644685E5F804DC166909574D5) |
| [Note 10 — Commitments and Contingencies](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s9BD34A00421D50D890F3618E96507589) | [46](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s9BD34A00421D50D890F3618E96507589) |
| [Note 11 — Income and Other Taxes](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s7258D1088D225BE2B60D0AB36D54E84B) | [48](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s7258D1088D225BE2B60D0AB36D54E84B) |
| [Note 12 — Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0810135C0BFA5ADABC1B93B8425B0ACE) | [50](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0810135C0BFA5ADABC1B93B8425B0ACE) |
| [Note 13 — Non-Controlling Interests](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s6E64E242263E5D4C915946B8F7E8BD89) | [52](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s6E64E242263E5D4C915946B8F7E8BD89) |
| [Note 14 — Capitalization](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s3B3FDD544E5A5C3AB6EA36CB0967F3F9) | [53](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s3B3FDD544E5A5C3AB6EA36CB0967F3F9) |
| [Note 15 — Earnings (Loss) Per Share](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s35337EE58A6052DCA36C47553F4C7836) | [56](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s35337EE58A6052DCA36C47553F4C7836) |
| [Note 16 — Stock-Based Compensation](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sDDE304113EB459BE8D05AEE1BDE7567D) | [60](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sDDE304113EB459BE8D05AEE1BDE7567D) |
| [Note 17 — Redeemable Shares](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sD52A2E8EB93F5DFC8BC134C85F3C7281) | [61](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sD52A2E8EB93F5DFC8BC134C85F3C7281) |
| [Note 18 — Segment Information](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s38EDFB6E84275CFEADD782946C862733) | [62](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s38EDFB6E84275CFEADD782946C862733) |
| [Note 19 — Supplemental Consolidated Financial Information](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s1A6744C4CC7858999BAC8746F6D866C6) | [65](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s1A6744C4CC7858999BAC8746F6D866C6) |
| [Note 20 — Subsequent Events](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sDDD23FEFB7885A0D91BCCB24C24FB4DA) | [66](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#sDDD23FEFB7885A0D91BCCB24C24FB4DA) |

4

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF FINANCIAL POSITION**

(in millions; unaudited)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | |
| **ASSETS** | | | | | | | |
| Current assets: |  | |  |  |  | |  |
| Cash and cash equivalents | $ | 9,193 |  |  | $ | 9,676 |  |
| Accounts receivable, net | 11,586 | |  |  | 12,371 | |  |
| Short-term financing receivables, net | 4,473 | |  |  | 4,398 | |  |
| Inventories, net | 3,135 | |  |  | 3,649 | |  |
| Other current assets | 6,929 | |  |  | 6,044 | |  |
| Total current assets | 35,316 | |  |  | 36,138 | |  |
| Property, plant, and equipment, net | 5,568 | |  |  | 5,259 | |  |
| Long-term investments | 768 | |  |  | 1,005 | |  |
| Long-term financing receivables, net | 4,350 | |  |  | 4,224 | |  |
| Goodwill | 39,998 | |  |  | 40,089 | |  |
| Intangible assets, net | 19,719 | |  |  | 22,270 | |  |
| Other non-current assets | 9,801 | |  |  | 2,835 | |  |
| Total assets | $ | 115,520 |  |  | $ | 111,820 |  |
| **LIABILITIES, REDEEMABLE SHARES, AND STOCKHOLDERS’ EQUITY (DEFICIT)** | | | | | | | |
| Current liabilities: |  | |  |  |  | |  |
| Short-term debt | $ | 5,949 |  |  | $ | 4,320 |  |
| Accounts payable | 19,411 | |  |  | 19,213 | |  |
| Accrued and other | 8,092 | |  |  | 8,495 | |  |
| Short-term deferred revenue | 13,568 | |  |  | 12,944 | |  |
| Total current liabilities | 47,020 | |  |  | 44,972 | |  |
| Long-term debt | 45,973 | |  |  | 49,201 | |  |
| Long-term deferred revenue | 11,780 | |  |  | 11,066 | |  |
| Other non-current liabilities | 6,628 | |  |  | 6,327 | |  |
| Total liabilities | 111,401 | |  |  | 111,566 | |  |
| Commitments and contingencies (Note 10) |  | |  |  |  | |  |
| Redeemable shares (Note 17) | 1,024 | |  |  | 1,196 | |  |
| Stockholders’ equity (deficit): |  | | |  |  | | |
| Common stock and capital in excess of $0.01 par value (Note 14) | 15,956 | |  |  | 16,114 | |  |
| Treasury stock at cost | (65 | | ) |  | (63 | | ) |
| Accumulated deficit | (17,775 | | ) |  | (21,349 | | ) |
| Accumulated other comprehensive loss | (565 | | ) |  | (467 | | ) |
| Total Dell Technologies Inc. stockholders’ deficit | (2,449 | | ) |  | (5,765 | | ) |
| Non-controlling interests | 5,544 | |  |  | 4,823 | |  |
| Total stockholders’ equity (deficit) | 3,095 | |  |  | (942 | | ) |
| Total liabilities, redeemable shares, and stockholders’ equity (deficit) | $ | 115,520 |  |  | $ | 111,820 |  |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

5

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF INCOME (LOSS)**

(in millions, except per share amounts; unaudited)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
| *Net revenue:* |  | |  |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Products | $ | 18,110 |  |  | $ | 18,149 |  |  | $ | 34,864 |  |  | $ | 34,820 |  |
| Services | 5,260 | |  |  | 4,793 | |  |  | 10,414 | |  |  | 9,478 | |  |
| Total net revenue | 23,370 | |  |  | 22,942 | |  |  | 45,278 | |  |  | 44,298 | |  |
| *Cost of net revenue:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Products | 13,889 | |  |  | 14,943 | |  |  | 26,968 | |  |  | 28,549 | |  |
| Services | 2,155 | |  |  | 1,876 | |  |  | 4,187 | |  |  | 3,748 | |  |
| Total cost of net revenue | 16,044 | |  |  | 16,819 | |  |  | 31,155 | |  |  | 32,297 | |  |
| Gross margin | 7,326 | |  |  | 6,123 | |  |  | 14,123 | |  |  | 12,001 | |  |
| *Operating expenses:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Selling, general, and administrative | 5,578 | |  |  | 4,961 | |  |  | 10,649 | |  |  | 9,905 | |  |
| Research and development | 1,229 | |  |  | 1,175 | |  |  | 2,405 | |  |  | 2,262 | |  |
| Total operating expenses | 6,807 | |  |  | 6,136 | |  |  | 13,054 | |  |  | 12,167 | |  |
| Operating income (loss) | 519 | |  |  | (13 | | ) |  | 1,069 | |  |  | (166 | | ) |
| Interest and other, net | (630 | | ) |  | (455 | | ) |  | (1,323 | | ) |  | (925 | | ) |
| Loss before income taxes | (111 | | ) |  | (468 | | ) |  | (254 | | ) |  | (1,091 | | ) |
| Income tax benefit | (4,343 | | ) |  | (7 | | ) |  | (4,815 | | ) |  | (92 | | ) |
| Net income (loss) | 4,232 | |  |  | (461 | | ) |  | 4,561 | |  |  | (999 | | ) |
| Less: Net income attributable to non-controlling interests | 816 | |  |  | 38 | |  |  | 852 | |  |  | 136 | |  |
| Net income (loss) attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. | $ | 3,416 |  |  | $ | (499 | ) |  | $ | 3,709 |  |  | $ | (1,135 | ) |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| *Earnings (loss) per share attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. - basic:* | | | | | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Dell Technologies Common Stock | $ | 4.75 |  |  |  | | |  | $ | 5.17 |  |  |  | | |
| Class V Common Stock |  | | |  | $ | 1.61 |  |  |  | | |  | $ | 3.97 |  |
| DHI Group |  | | |  | $ | (1.44 | ) |  |  | | |  | $ | (3.39 | ) |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| *Earnings (loss) per share attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. - diluted:* | | | | | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Dell Technologies Common Stock | $ | 4.47 |  |  |  | | |  | $ | 4.84 |  |  |  | | |
| Class V Common Stock |  | | |  | $ | 1.58 |  |  |  | | |  | $ | 3.91 |  |
| DHI Group |  | | |  | $ | (1.45 | ) |  |  | | |  | $ | (3.40 | ) |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

6

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (LOSS)**

(in millions; unaudited)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
| Net income (loss) | $ | 4,232 |  |  | $ | (461 | ) |  | $ | 4,561 |  |  | $ | (999 | ) |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| *Other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Foreign currency translation adjustments | (78 | | ) |  | (261 | | ) |  | (236 | | ) |  | (603 | | ) |
| Available-for-sale investments: |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Change in unrealized gains (losses) | — | |  |  | 6 | |  |  | — | |  |  | (1 | | ) |
| Reclassification adjustment for net gains realized in net income (loss) | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (1 | | ) |
| Net change in market value of investments | — | |  |  | 6 | |  |  | — | |  |  | (2 | | ) |
| Cash flow hedges: |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Change in unrealized gains | 105 | |  |  | 120 | |  |  | 257 | |  |  | 241 | |  |
| Reclassification adjustment for net (gains) losses included in net income (loss) | (68 | | ) |  | (77 | | ) |  | (126 | | ) |  | (46 | | ) |
| Net change in cash flow hedges | 37 | |  |  | 43 | |  |  | 131 | |  |  | 195 | |  |
| Pension and other postretirement plans: |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Recognition of actuarial net gain from pension and other postretirement plans | 1 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 8 | |  |  | — | |  |
| Reclassification adjustments for net (gains) losses from pension and other | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |
| Net change in actuarial net gain from pension and other postretirement plans | 1 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 8 | |  |  | — | |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Total other comprehensive loss, net of tax expense of $0 and $5, respectively, and $7 and $7, respectively | (40 | | ) |  | (212 | | ) |  | (97 | | ) |  | (410 | | ) |
| Comprehensive income (loss), net of tax | 4,192 | |  |  | (673 | | ) |  | 4,464 | |  |  | (1,409 | | ) |
| Less: Net income attributable to non-controlling interests | 816 | |  |  | 38 | |  |  | 852 | |  |  | 136 | |  |
| Less: Other comprehensive income (loss) attributable to non-controlling interests | — | |  |  | 1 | |  |  | 1 | |  |  | (4 | | ) |
| Comprehensive income (loss) attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. | $ | 3,376 |  |  | $ | (712 | ) |  | $ | 3,611 |  |  | $ | (1,541 | ) |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

7

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS**

(in millions; continued on next page; unaudited)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
| Cash flows from operating activities: |  | | |  |  | | |
| Net income (loss) | $ | 4,561 |  |  | $ | (999 | ) |
| Adjustments to reconcile net income (loss) to net cash provided by operating activities: |  | | |  |  | | |
| Depreciation and amortization | 3,114 | |  |  | 3,845 | |  |
| Stock-based compensation expense | 564 | |  |  | 415 | |  |
| Deferred income taxes | (5,541 | | ) |  | (679 | | ) |
| Provision for doubtful accounts — including financing receivables | 76 | |  |  | 81 | |  |
| Impairments | 619 | |  |  | — | |  |
| Other | 5 | |  |  | 98 | |  |
| Changes in assets and liabilities, net of effects from acquisitions and dispositions: |  | | |  |  | | |
| Accounts receivable | 632 | |  |  | 76 | |  |
| Financing receivables | (362 | | ) |  | (748 | | ) |
| Inventories | 503 | |  |  | (1,136 | | ) |
| Other assets | (1,010 | | ) |  | (520 | | ) |
| Accounts payable | 240 | |  |  | 2,630 | |  |
| Deferred revenue | 1,482 | |  |  | 1,117 | |  |
| Accrued and other liabilities | (921 | | ) |  | (388 | | ) |
| Change in cash from operating activities | 3,962 | |  |  | 3,792 | |  |
| Cash flows from investing activities: |  | | |  |  | | |
| Investments: |  | | |  |  | | |
| Purchases | (70 | | ) |  | (888 | | ) |
| Maturities and sales | 430 | |  |  | 1,322 | |  |
| Capital expenditures | (1,083 | | ) |  | (561 | | ) |
| Capitalized software development costs | (184 | | ) |  | (160 | | ) |
| Acquisition of businesses, net | (384 | | ) |  | — | |  |
| Divestitures of businesses, net | — | |  |  | 142 | |  |
| Asset acquisitions, net | — | |  |  | (38 | | ) |
| Asset dispositions, net | (3 | | ) |  | (6 | | ) |
| Other | 11 | |  |  | 27 | |  |
| Change in cash from investing activities | (1,283 | | ) |  | (162 | | ) |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

8

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS**

(continued; in millions; unaudited)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
| Cash flows from financing activities: |  | | |  |  | | |
| Share repurchases for tax withholdings of equity awards | (363 | | ) |  | (199 | | ) |
| Proceeds from the issuance of common stock of subsidiaries | 151 | |  |  | 653 | |  |
| Repurchases of common stock of subsidiaries | (1,044 | | ) |  | — | |  |
| Proceeds from debt | 12,201 | |  |  | 4,637 | |  |
| Repayments of debt | (13,911 | | ) |  | (6,948 | | ) |
| Other | 44 | |  |  | (130 | | ) |
| Change in cash from financing activities | (2,922 | | ) |  | (1,987 | | ) |
| Effect of exchange rate changes on cash, cash equivalents, and restricted cash | (62 | | ) |  | (216 | | ) |
| Change in cash, cash equivalents, and restricted cash | (305 | | ) |  | 1,427 | |  |
| Cash, cash equivalents, and restricted cash at beginning of the period | 10,240 | |  |  | 14,378 | |  |
| Cash, cash equivalents, and restricted cash at end of the period | $ | 9,935 |  |  | $ | 15,805 |  |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

9

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS’ EQUITY (DEFICIT)**

(in millions; unaudited)

**Three Months Ended August 2, 2019**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Common Stock and Capital in Excess of Par Value** | | | | | |  | **Treasury Stock** | | | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | **Dell Technologies Common Stock (a)** | | | | | | | | | | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | **Issued Shares** | |  | **Amount** | | |  | **Shares** | |  | **Amount** | | |  | **Accumulated Deficit** | | |  | **Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income/(Loss)** | | |  | **Dell Technologies Stockholders’ Equity (Deficit)** | | |  | **Non-Controlling Interests** | | |  | **Total Stockholders’ Equity (Deficit)** | | |
| **Balances as of May 3, 2019** | 721 |  |  | $ | 15,179 |  |  | 2 |  |  | $ | (65 | ) |  | $ | (21,053 | ) |  | $ | (525 | ) |  | $ | (6,464 | ) |  | $ | 4,803 |  |  | $ | (1,661 | ) |
| Net income | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | 3,416 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 3,416 | |  |  | 816 | |  |  | 4,232 | |  |
| Foreign currency translation adjustments | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (78 | | ) |  | (78 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (78 | | ) |
| Cash flow hedges, net change | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 37 | |  |  | 37 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 37 | |  |
| Pension and other post-retirement | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 1 | |  |  | 1 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 1 | |  |
| Issuance of common stock | 5 |  |  | 88 | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 88 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 88 | |  |
| Stock-based compensation expense | — |  |  | 62 | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 62 | |  |  | 239 | |  |  | 301 | |  |
| Revaluation of redeemable shares | — |  |  | 750 | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 750 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 750 | |  |
| Impact from equity transactions of non-controlling interests | — |  |  | (123 | | ) |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | (138 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (261 | | ) |  | (314 | | ) |  | (575 | | ) |
| **Balances as of August 2, 2019** | 726 |  |  | $ | 15,956 |  |  | 2 |  |  | $ | (65 | ) |  | $ | (17,775 | ) |  | $ | (565 | ) |  | $ | (2,449 | ) |  | $ | 5,544 |  |  | $ | 3,095 |  |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

(a) See Note 14 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information on Dell Technologies Common Stock.

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

10

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS’ EQUITY (DEFICIT)**

(in millions; unaudited)

**Six Months Ended August 2, 2019**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Common Stock and Capital in Excess of Par Value** | | | | | |  | **Treasury Stock** | | | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | **Dell Technologies Common Stock (a)** | | | | | | | | | | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | **Issued Shares** | |  | **Amount** | | |  | **Shares** | |  | **Amount** | | |  | **Accumulated Deficit** | | |  | **Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income/(Loss)** | | |  | **Dell Technologies Stockholders’ Equity (Deficit)** | | |  | **Non-Controlling Interests** | | |  | **Total Stockholders’ Equity (Deficit)** | | |
| **Balances as of February 2, 2019** | 721 |  |  | $ | 16,114 |  |  | 2 |  |  | $ | (63 | ) |  | $ | (21,349 | ) |  | $ | (467 | ) |  | $ | (5,765 | ) |  | $ | 4,823 |  |  | $ | (942 | ) |
| Adjustment for adoption of accounting standards (Note 1) | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | 3 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 3 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 3 | |  |
| Net income | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | 3,709 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 3,709 | |  |  | 852 | |  |  | 4,561 | |  |
| Foreign currency translation adjustments | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (236 | | ) |  | (236 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (236 | | ) |
| Cash flow hedges, net change | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 130 | |  |  | 130 | |  |  | 1 | |  |  | 131 | |  |
| Pension and other post-retirement | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 8 | |  |  | 8 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 8 | |  |
| Issuance of common stock | 5 |  |  | 85 | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 85 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 85 | |  |
| Stock-based compensation expense | — |  |  | 104 | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 104 | |  |  | 460 | |  |  | 564 | |  |
| Treasury stock repurchases | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | (2 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (2 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (2 | | ) |
| Revaluation of redeemable shares | — |  |  | 172 | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 172 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 172 | |  |
| Impact from equity transactions of non-controlling interests | — |  |  | (519 | | ) |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | (138 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (657 | | ) |  | (592 | | ) |  | (1,249 | | ) |
| **Balances as of August 2, 2019** | 726 |  |  | $ | 15,956 |  |  | 2 |  |  | $ | (65 | ) |  | $ | (17,775 | ) |  | $ | (565 | ) |  | $ | (2,449 | ) |  | $ | 5,544 |  |  | $ | 3,095 |  |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

(a) See Note 14 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information on Dell Technologies Common Stock.

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

11

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS’ EQUITY (DEFICIT)**

(in millions; unaudited)

**Three Months Ended August 3, 2018**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Common Stock and Capital in Excess of Par Value** | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | **Treasury Stock** | | | | | | | | | | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | **DHI Group** | | | | | |  | **Class V Common Stock** | | | | | |  | **DHI Group** | | | | | |  | **Class V Common Stock** | | | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | **Issued Shares** | |  | **Amount** | | |  | **Issued Shares** | |  | **Amount** | | |  | **Shares** | |  | **Amount** | | |  | **Shares** | |  | **Amount** | | |  | **Accumulated Deficit** | | |  | **Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income/(Loss)** | | |  | **Dell Technologies Stockholders’ Equity (Deficit)** | | |  | **Non-Controlling Interests** | | |  | **Total Stockholders**’**Equity (Deficit)** | | |
| **Balances as of May 4, 2018** | 570 |  |  | $ | 9,480 |  |  | 223 |  |  | $ | 10,041 |  |  | 1 |  |  | $ | (53 | ) |  | 24 |  |  | $ | (1,424 | ) |  | $ | (7,438 | ) |  | $ | (121 | ) |  | $ | 10,485 |  |  | $ | 6,495 |  |  | $ | 16,980 |  |
| Net loss | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | (499 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (499 | | ) |  | 38 | |  |  | (461 | | ) |
| Foreign currency translation adjustments | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (261 | | ) |  | (261 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (261 | | ) |
| Investments, net change | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 5 | |  |  | 5 | |  |  | 1 | |  |  | 6 | |  |
| Cash flow hedges, net change | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 43 | |  |  | 43 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 43 | |  |
| Issuance of common stock | 1 |  |  | (1 | | ) |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (1 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (1 | | ) |
| Stock-based compensation expense | — |  |  | 15 | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 15 | |  |  | 201 | |  |  | 216 | |  |
| Treasury stock repurchases | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | 1 |  |  | (10 | | ) |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (10 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (10 | | ) |
| Revaluation of redeemable shares | — |  |  | (1,212 | | ) |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (1,212 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (1,212 | | ) |
| Impact from equity transactions of non-controlling interests | — |  |  | (2 | | ) |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (2 | | ) |  | (87 | | ) |  | (89 | | ) |
| **Balances as of August 3, 2018** | 571 |  |  | $ | 8,280 |  |  | 223 |  |  | $ | 10,041 |  |  | 2 |  |  | $ | (63 | ) |  | 24 |  |  | $ | (1,424 | ) |  | $ | (7,937 | ) |  | $ | (334 | ) |  | $ | 8,563 |  |  | $ | 6,648 |  |  | $ | 15,211 |  |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

12

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS’ EQUITY (DEFICIT)**

(in millions; unaudited)

**Six Months Ended August 3, 2018**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Common Stock and Capital in Excess of Par Value** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | **Treasury Stock** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | **DHI Group** | | | | | | |  | **Class V Common Stock** | | | | | |  | **DHI Group** | | | | | |  | **Class V Common Stock** | | | | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | **Issued Shares** | |  | | **Amount** | | |  | **Issued Shares** | |  | **Amount** | | |  | **Shares** | |  | **Amount** | | |  | **Shares** | |  | | **Amount** | | |  | **Accumulated Deficit** | | |  | **Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income/(Loss)** | | |  | **Dell Technologies Stockholders’ Equity (Deficit)** | | |  | **Non-Controlling Interests** | | |  | **Total Stockholders**’**Equity (Deficit)** | | |
| **Balances as of February 2, 2018** | 571 |  |  | | $ | 9,848 |  |  | 223 |  |  | $ | 10,041 |  |  | 1 |  |  | $ | (16 | ) |  | 24 |  |  | | $ | (1,424 | ) |  | $ | (6,860 | ) |  | $ | 130 |  |  | $ | 11,719 |  |  | $ | 5,766 |  |  | $ | 17,485 |  |
| Adjustment for adoption of accounting standards | — |  |  | | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  | — |  | — | |  |  | 58 | |  |  | (58 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (5 | | ) |  | (5 | | ) |
| Net loss | — |  | — |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  | — |  | — | |  |  | (1,135 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (1,135 | | ) |  | 136 | |  |  | (999 | | ) |
| Foreign currency translation adjustments | — |  | — |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  | — |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (603 | | ) |  | (603 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (603 | | ) |
| Investments, net change | — |  | — |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  | — |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (2 | | ) |  | (2 | | ) |
| Cash flow hedges, net change | — |  | — |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  | — |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 197 | |  |  | 197 | |  |  | (2 | | ) |  | 195 | |  |
| Issuance of common stock | — |  |  | | (4 | | ) |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  |  | | |  | — |  |  | | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (4 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (4 | | ) |
| Stock-based compensation expense | — |  |  | | 37 | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 37 | |  |  | 378 | |  |  | 415 | |  |
| Treasury stock repurchases | — |  |  | | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | 1 |  |  | (47 | | ) |  | — |  |  | | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (47 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (47 | | ) |
| Revaluation of redeemable shares | — |  |  | | (1,672 | | ) |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (1,672 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (1,672 | | ) |
| Impact from equity transactions of non-controlling interests | — |  |  | | 71 | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | — | |  |  | — |  |  | | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 71 | |  |  | 377 | |  |  | 448 | |  |
| **Balances as of August 3, 2018** | 571 |  |  | | $ | 8,280 |  |  | 223 |  |  | $ | 10,041 |  |  | 2 |  |  | $ | (63 | ) |  | 24 |  |  | | $ | (1,424 | ) |  | $ | (7,937 | ) |  | $ | (334 | ) |  | $ | 8,563 |  |  | $ | 6,648 |  |  | $ | 15,211 |  |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

13

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 1 — BASIS OF PRESENTATION**

References in these Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements to the “Company” or “Dell Technologies” mean Dell Technologies Inc. individually and together with its consolidated subsidiaries.

*Basis of Presentation —*The accompanying unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements should be read in conjunction with the audited Consolidated Financial Statements and accompanying Notes filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) in the Company’s Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended February 1, 2019. These Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“GAAP”). In the opinion of management, the accompanying Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements reflect all adjustments of a normal recurring nature considered necessary to fairly state the financial position of Dell Technologies Inc. as of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, the results of its operations and corresponding comprehensive income (loss) for the three and six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018, and its cash flows for the six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018.

The preparation of financial statements in accordance with GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements and the accompanying Notes. Actual results could differ materially from those estimates. The results of operations and comprehensive income (loss) for the three and six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018 and the cash flows for the six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018 are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for the full fiscal year or for any other fiscal period.

The Company’s fiscal year is the 52- or 53-week period ending on the Friday nearest January 31. The fiscal year ended February 1, 2019 (“Fiscal 2019”) was a 52-week period, and the fiscal year ending January 31, 2020 (“Fiscal 2020”) will be a 52-week period.

*Principles of Consolidation*— These Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements include the accounts of Dell Technologies and its wholly-owned subsidiaries, as well as the accounts of VMware, Inc., Pivotal Software, Inc. (“Pivotal”), and SecureWorks Corp. (“Secureworks”), each of which is majority-owned by Dell Technologies. All intercompany transactions have been eliminated.

Unless the context indicates otherwise, references in these Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements to “VMware” mean the VMware reportable segment, which reflects the operations of VMware, Inc. (NYSE: VMW) within Dell Technologies.

*EMC Merger Transaction* — On September 7, 2016, the Company completed its acquisition of EMC Corporation (“EMC”) by merger (the “EMC merger transaction”). The consolidated results of EMC are included in Dell Technologies’ consolidated results presented in these financial statements.

*Pivotal Initial Public Offering*— On April 24, 2018, Pivotal, which is majority-owned by Dell Technologies, completed a registered underwritten initial public offering (“IPO”) of its Class A common stock (NYSE: PVTL). The results of Pivotal’s operations are included in other businesses. For more information regarding the Company’s ownership of Pivotal, see Note 13 and Note 20 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

*Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements*

*Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments* *—* In June 2016, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) issued amended guidance which replaces the current incurred loss impairment methodology for measurement of credit losses on financial instruments with a methodology that reflects expected credit losses and requires consideration of a broader range of reasonable and supportable information to inform credit loss estimates. Public entities must adopt the new guidance for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, and interim periods within those fiscal years, with early adoption permitted for fiscal periods beginning after December 15, 2018. The Company is currently evaluating the impact that the standard will have on the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

14

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

*Intangibles - Goodwill and Other - Internal-Use Software*—In August 2018, the FASB issued guidance on a customer’s accounting for implementation costs incurred in a cloud-computing arrangement when hosted by a vendor. In a hosting arrangement that is a service contract, certain implementation costs should be capitalized and amortized over the term of the arrangement. Public entities must adopt the new guidance for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, and interim periods within those fiscal years, with early adoption permitted for fiscal periods beginning after December 15, 2018. The Company does not expect the adoption of this guidance to have a material impact on the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

*Recently Adopted Accounting Pronouncements*

*Leases* *—* In February 2016, the FASB issued amended guidance on the accounting for leasing transactions. The primary objective of this update is to increase transparency and comparability among organizations by requiring lessees to recognize a lease liability for the obligation to make lease payments and a right-of-use (“ROU”) asset for the right to use the underlying asset for the lease term. The guidance also results in some changes to lessor accounting and requires additional disclosures about all leasing arrangements.

The Company adopted the standard (the “new lease standard”) as of February 2, 2019 using a modified retrospective approach, with the cumulative-effect adjustment to the opening balance of stockholders’ equity (deficit) as of the adoption date. The Company elected to apply the practical expedient using the transition option whereby prior comparative periods were not retrospectively adjusted in the Consolidated Financial Statements. Accordingly, prior comparative periods have not been adjusted in the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements. The Company also elected the package of practical expedients which does not require reassessment of initial direct costs, classification of a lease, and definition of a lease.

The adoption of the new lease standard resulted in the recognition of $1.6 billion in operating lease liabilities and related ROU assets on the Consolidated Statements of Financial Position. The Company recorded an immaterial adjustment to stockholders’ equity (deficit) as of February 2, 2019 to reflect the cumulative effect of adoption of the new lease standard. As of February 2, 2019, there were no material finance leases for which the Company was a lessee.

In the area of lessor accounting, as of February 2, 2019, the Company began to originate operating leases due to the elimination of third-party residual value guarantee insurance from the sales-type lease classification test. Leases that commenced prior to the adoption of the new lease standard were not reassessed or restated pursuant to the practical expedients elected. Accordingly, there was no cumulative adjustment to stockholders’ equity (deficit) related to lessor accounting.

See Note 4 and Note 5 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information about the Company’s leases from a lessor and lessee perspective, respectively.

15

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 2 — INTERIM UPDATE TO SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

As discussed in Note 1 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements, the Company adopted the new lease standard as of February 2, 2019, using the modified retrospective method. A lease is defined as a contract that conveys the right to control the use of an identified asset for a period of time in exchange for consideration. The Company enters into contracts that are, or contain, leases as both a lessee and a lessor. The following accounting policies have been updated as part of the adoption of the new lease standard.

*Accounting for Operating Leases as a Lessee* *—*In its ordinary course of business, the Company enters into leases as a lessee for office buildings, warehouses, employee vehicles, and equipment. The Company determines if an arrangement is a lease or contains a lease at inception. Operating leases result in the recognition of ROU assets and lease liabilities on the Consolidated Statements of Financial Position. ROU assets represent the right to use an underlying asset for the lease term and lease liabilities represent the obligation to make lease payments arising from the lease, measured on a discounted basis.

At lease inception, the lease liability is measured at the present value of the lease payments over the lease term. The operating lease ROU asset equals the lease liability adjusted for any initial direct costs, prepaid or deferred rent, and lease incentives.

The Company uses the implicit rate when readily determinable. As most of the leases do not provide an implicit rate, the Company uses its incremental borrowing rate based on the information available at the commencement date to determine the present value of lease payments. Incremental borrowing rates used to determine the present value of lease payments were derived by reference to the Company’s secured-debt yields corresponding to the lease commencement date.

The lease term may include options to extend or to terminate the lease that the Company is reasonably certain to exercise. Lease expense is recognized on a straight-line basis over the lease term in most instances.

The Company has elected not to record leases with an initial term of 12 months or less on the Consolidated Statements of Financial Position. Lease expense on such leases is recognized on a straight-line basis over the lease term. The Company does not generate material sublease income and has no material related party leases. The Company’s lease agreements do not contain any material residual value guarantees or material restrictive covenants.

The Company’s office building agreements contain costs such as common area maintenance and other executory costs that are variable in nature. Variable lease costs are expensed as incurred. The Company combines lease and non-lease components, such as common area and other maintenance costs, in calculating the ROU assets and lease liabilities for its office buildings and employee vehicles. Under certain service agreements with third-party logistics providers, the Company directs the use of the inventory within the warehouses and, therefore, controls the assets. The warehouses and some of the equipment used are considered embedded leases. The Company accounts for the lease and non-lease components separately. The lease components consist of the warehouses and some of the equipment, such as conveyor belts. The non-lease components consist of services and other shared equipment, such as material handling and transportation. The Company allocates the consideration to the lease and non-lease components using their relative standalone values. See Note 5 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information.

*Accounting for Leases as a Lessor* *—*The Company’s wholly-owned subsidiary Dell Financial Services and its affiliates (“DFS”) acts as a lessor to provide equipment financing to customers through a variety of lease arrangements (“DFS leases”). Subsequent to the adoption of the new lease standard, new DFS leases are classified as sales-type leases, direct financing leases, or operating leases. Direct financing leases under the new lease standard are immaterial. Leases that commenced prior to the adoption of the new lease standard were not reassessed or restated pursuant to the practical expedients elected and will continue to be accounted for under previous lease accounting guidance.

16

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

When a contract includes lease and non-lease components, DFS allocates consideration under the contract to each component based on relative standalone selling price. Whenever the terms of the lease transfer control to the lessee, the contract is typically classified as a sales-type lease. Through these arrangements, the lessee has the right to substantially all of the economic benefits from use of the identified asset and has the right to direct the use of such asset during the period of use. In many arrangements, the lessee also retains ownership at the end of the lease term. On commencement of sales-type leases, the Company recognizes profit up-front, and amounts due from the customer under the lease contract are recognized as financing receivables on the Consolidated Statements of Financial Position. Interest income is recognized as Net revenue over the term of the lease based on the effective interest method. For sales and other taxes collected from the lessee, the Company has elected not to include such taxes as part of lease revenue.

All other leases which do not meet the definition of a sales-type lease or direct financing lease are classified as operating leases. The underlying asset in an operating lease arrangement is carried at depreciated cost as “Equipment under operating leases” within Property, plant, and equipment, net on the Consolidated Statements of Financial Position. Depreciation is calculated using the straight-line method over the term of the underlying lease contract and is recognized as Cost of net revenue. The depreciable basis is the original cost of the equipment less the estimated residual value of the equipment at the end of the lease term. The Company recognizes operating lease revenue on a straight-line basis over the lease term and expenses deferred initial direct costs on the same basis. Impairment of equipment under operating leases is assessed on the same basis as other long-lived assets.

DFS provides lessees with the option to extend the lease or purchase the underlying asset at the end of the lease term, which is considered when evaluating lease classification. In general, DFS’s lease arrangements do not have variable payment terms and are non-cancelable.

See Note 4 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for more information regarding DFS leasing arrangements.

*Financing Receivables —*Financing receivables are presented net of allowance for losses and consist of customer receivables and residual interest. Customer receivables, gross includes amounts due from customers under revolving loans, fixed-term loans, fixed-term sales-type or direct financing leases, and accrued interest. The Company has two portfolios, consisting of: (1) fixed-term leases and loans and (2) revolving loans, and assesses risk at the portfolio level to determine the appropriate allowance levels. The portfolio segments are further segregated into classes based on products, customer type, and credit risk evaluation: (1) Revolving - Dell Preferred Account (“DPA”); (2) Revolving - Dell Business Credit (“DBC”); and (3) Fixed-term - Consumer and Commercial. Fixed-term leases and loans are offered to qualified small and medium-sized businesses, large commercial accounts, governmental organizations, and educational entities. Additionally, fixed-term loans are also offered to certain individual consumer customers. Revolving loans are offered under private label credit financing programs. The DPA revolving loan programs are offered to individual consumer customers and the DBC revolving loan programs are offered to small and medium-sized business customers.

The Company retains a residual interest in equipment leased under its fixed-term lease programs. The amount of the residual interest is established at the inception of the lease based upon estimates of the value of the equipment at the end of the lease term using historical studies, industry data, and future value-at-risk demand valuation methods. On a quarterly basis, the Company assesses the carrying amount of its recorded residual values for impairment. Anticipated declines in specific future residual values that are considered to be other-than-temporary are recorded currently in earnings. Generally, residual value risk on equipment under lease is not considered to be significant because of the existence of a secondary market with respect to the equipment. The lease agreement also clearly defines applicable return conditions and remedies for non-compliance, to ensure that the leased equipment will be in good operating condition upon return. Model changes and updates, as well as market strength and product acceptance, are monitored and adjustments are made to residual values in accordance with the significance of any such changes. Remarketing sales staff works closely with customers and dealers to manage the sale of lease returns and the recovery of residual exposure. As of August 2, 2019, the Company has not recorded significant residual value impairment.

17

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

*Asset Securitization* *—* The Company transfers certain U.S. and European customer loan and lease payments and associated equipment to Special Purpose Entities (“SPEs”) that meet the definition of a Variable Interest Entity (“VIE”) and are consolidated into the Consolidated Financial Statements. These SPEs are bankruptcy-remote legal entities with separate assets and liabilities. The purpose of the SPEs is to facilitate the funding of customer lease and loan payments and associated equipment in the capital markets. These SPEs have entered into financing arrangements with multi-seller conduits that, in turn, issue asset-backed debt securities in the capital markets. The asset securitizations in the SPEs are accounted for as secured borrowings. See Note 4 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information on the impact of the consolidation.

18

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 3 — FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS AND INVESTMENTS**

The following table presents the Company’s hierarchy for its assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Level 1** | | |  | **Level 2** | | |  | **Level 3** | | |  | **Total** | | |  | **Level 1** | | |  | **Level 2** | | |  | **Level 3** | | |  | **Total** | | |
|  | **Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets** | | |  | **Significant Other Observable Inputs** | | |  | **Significant Unobservable Inputs** | | |  |  | | |  | **Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets** | | |  | **Significant Other Observable Inputs** | | |  | **Significant Unobservable Inputs** | | |  |  | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Assets:* |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |
| Cash and cash equivalents: |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Money market funds | $ | 4,832 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 4,832 |  |  | $ | 5,221 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 5,221 |  |
| Equity and other securities | 8 | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 8 | |  |  | 314 | |  |  | 20 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 334 | |  |
| Derivative instruments | — | |  |  | 251 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 251 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 97 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 97 | |  |
| Total assets | $ | 4,840 |  |  | $ | 251 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 5,091 |  |  | $ | 5,535 |  |  | $ | 117 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 5,652 |  |
| *Liabilities:* |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |
| Derivative instruments | $ | — |  |  | $ | 36 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 36 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 60 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 60 |  |
| Total liabilities | $ | — |  |  | $ | 36 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 36 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 60 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 60 |  |

The following section describes the valuation methodologies the Company uses to measure financial instruments at fair value:

*Money Market Funds*— The Company’s investment in money market funds that are classified as cash equivalents hold underlying investments with a weighted average maturity of 90 days or less and are recognized at fair value. The valuations of these securities are based on quoted prices in active markets for identical assets, when available, or pricing models whereby all significant inputs are observable or can be derived from or corroborated by observable market data. The Company reviews security pricing and assesses liquidity on a quarterly basis. As of August 2, 2019, the Company’s U.S. portfolio had no material exposure to money market funds with a fluctuating net asset value.

*Equity and Other Securities*— The Company’s investments in equity and other securities that are measured at fair value on a recurring basis consist primarily of strategic investments in publicly-traded companies. The valuation of these securities is based on quoted prices in active markets.

*Derivative Instruments* — The Company’s derivative financial instruments consist primarily of foreign currency forward and purchased option contracts and interest rate swaps. The fair value of the portfolio is determined using valuation models based on market observable inputs, including interest rate curves, forward and spot prices for currencies, and implied volatilities. Credit risk is also factored into the fair value calculation of the Company’s derivative instrument portfolio. See Note 7 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for a description of the Company’s derivative financial instrument activities.

*Deferred Compensation Plans* —The Company offers deferred compensation plans for eligible employees, which allow participants to defer payment for a portion of their compensation. Assets were the same as liabilities associated with the plans at approximately $226 million and $192 million as of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, respectively, and are included in other assets and other liabilities on the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position. The net impact to the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Income (Loss) is not material since changes in the fair value of the assets substantially offset changes in the fair value of the liabilities. As such, assets and liabilities associated with these plans have not been included in the above table. These fair values were determined based on observable market prices in a less active market or based on valuation methodologies using observable inputs and were categorized as Level 2 in the fair value hierarchy.

19

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

*Assets and Liabilities Measured at Fair Value on a Nonrecurring Basis* — Certain assets are measured at fair value on a nonrecurring basis and therefore are not included in the recurring fair value table above. These assets consist primarily of non-financial assets such as goodwill and intangible assets. See Note 8 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information about goodwill and intangible assets.

As of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, the Company held private strategic investments of $760 million and $671 million, respectively. As these investments represent early-stage companies without readily determinable fair values, they are not included in the recurring fair value table above.

The Company has elected to apply the measurement alternative for these investments. Under the alternative, the Company measures investments without readily determinable fair values at cost, less impairment, adjusted by observable price changes. The Company must make a separate election to use the alternative for each eligible investment and is required to reassess at each reporting period whether an investment qualifies for the alternative. In evaluating these investments for impairment or observable price changes, the Company uses inputs including pre- and post-money valuations of recent financing events and the impact of those on its fully diluted ownership percentages, as well as other available information regarding the issuer’s historical and forecasted performance.

*Carrying Value and Estimated Fair Value of Outstanding Debt*— The following table presents the carrying value and estimated fair value of the Company’s outstanding debt as described in Note 6 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements, including the current portion, as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | | | | | |
|  | **Carrying Value** | | |  | **Fair Value** | | |  | **Carrying Value** | | |  | **Fair Value** | | |
|  | (in billions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Senior Secured Credit Facilities | $ | 9.4 |  |  | $ | 9.5 |  |  | $ | 12.5 |  |  | $ | 12.6 |  |
| First Lien Notes | $ | 20.5 |  |  | $ | 22.8 |  |  | $ | 19.8 |  |  | $ | 21.0 |  |
| Unsecured Notes and Debentures | $ | 1.2 |  |  | $ | 1.4 |  |  | $ | 1.8 |  |  | $ | 1.9 |  |
| Senior Notes | $ | 3.2 |  |  | $ | 3.4 |  |  | $ | 3.1 |  |  | $ | 3.4 |  |
| EMC Notes | $ | 3.0 |  |  | $ | 3.0 |  |  | $ | 3.0 |  |  | $ | 2.9 |  |
| VMware Notes | $ | 4.0 |  |  | $ | 4.0 |  |  | $ | 4.0 |  |  | $ | 3.9 |  |
| Margin Loan Facility | $ | 4.0 |  |  | $ | 4.0 |  |  | $ | 3.3 |  |  | $ | 3.4 |  |

The fair values of the outstanding debt shown in the table above, as well as the DFS debt described in Note 4 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements, were determined based on observable market prices in a less active market or based on valuation methodologies using observable inputs and were categorized as Level 2 in the fair value hierarchy. The carrying value of DFS debt approximates fair value.

**Investments**

The following table presents the carrying value of the Company’s strategic investments in publicly-traded and privately-held companies as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Cost** | | |  | **Unrealized Gain** | | |  | **Unrealized (Loss)** | | |  | **Carrying Value** | | |  | **Cost** | | |  | **Unrealized Gain** | | |  | **Unrealized (Loss)** | | |  | **Carrying Value** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Equity and other securities | $ | 715 |  |  | $ | 78 |  |  | $ | (25 | ) |  | $ | 768 |  |  | $ | 638 |  |  | $ | 539 |  |  | $ | (172 | ) |  | $ | 1,005 |  |

For the six months ended August 2, 2019, the equity and other securities without readily determinable fair values increased by $78 million, due to upward adjustments for observable price changes, offset by $8 million of downward adjustments that were primarily attributable to impairments. The remainder of equity and other securities consists of publicly-traded investments that are measured at fair value on a recurring basis.

20

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 4 — FINANCIAL SERVICES**

The Company offers or arranges various financing options, services, and alternative payment structures for its customers in North America, Europe, Australia, and New Zealand through DFS. The Company also arranges financing for some of its customers in various countries where DFS does not currently operate as a captive enterprise. The key activities of DFS include originating, collecting, and servicing customer financing arrangements primarily related to the purchase or use of Dell Technologies products and services. In some cases, DFS also offers financing on the purchase of third-party technology products that complement the Dell Technologies portfolio of products and services. New financing originations were $2.0 billion and $1.9 billion for the three months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018, respectively, and were $3.7 billion and $3.6 billion for the six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018, respectively.

The Company’s lease and loan arrangements with customers are aggregated into the following categories:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Revolving loans* — Revolving loans offered under private label credit financing programs provide qualified customers with a revolving credit line for the purchase of products and services offered by Dell Technologies. These private label credit financing programs are referred to as Dell Preferred Account (“DPA”) and Dell Business Credit (“DBC”). The DPA product is primarily offered to individual consumer customers, and the DBC product is primarily offered to small and medium-sized commercial customers. Revolving loans in the United States bear interest at a variable annual percentage rate that is tied to the prime rate. Based on historical payment patterns, revolving loan transactions are typically repaid within twelve months on average. Due to the short-term nature of the revolving loan portfolio, the carrying value of the portfolio approximates fair value. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Fixed-term leases and loans*— The Company enters into financing arrangements with customers who seek lease financing for equipment they might otherwise purchase. Under the new lease standard discussed in Note 1 and Note 2 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements, new DFS leases are classified as sales-type leases, direct financing leases, or operating leases. When the terms of the DFS lease transfer control of the underlying asset to the lessee, the contract is typically classified as a sales-type lease. Direct financing leases under the new lease standard are immaterial. All other new DFS leases are classified as operating leases. Leases that commenced prior to the adoption of the new lease standard were not reassessed or restated pursuant to the practical expedients elected and will continue to be accounted for under previous lease accounting guidance. Leases with business customers have fixed terms of generally two to four years. |

The Company also offers fixed-term loans to qualified small businesses, large commercial accounts, governmental organizations, educational entities, and certain individual consumer customers. These loans are repaid in equal payments including interest and have defined terms of generally three to five years. The fair value of the fixed-term loan portfolio is determined using market observable inputs.  The carrying value of these loans approximates fair value.

21

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**Financing Receivables**

The following table presents the components of the Company’s financing receivables segregated by portfolio segment as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Revolving** | | |  | **Fixed-term** | | |  | **Total** | | |  | **Revolving** | | |  | **Fixed-term** | | |  | **Total** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Financing receivables, net:* |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Customer receivables, gross (a) | $ | 778 |  |  | $ | 7,544 |  |  | $ | 8,322 |  |  | $ | 835 |  |  | $ | 7,249 |  |  | $ | 8,084 |  |
| Allowances for losses | (67 | | ) |  | (71 | | ) |  | (138 | | ) |  | (75 | | ) |  | (61 | | ) |  | (136 | | ) |
| Customer receivables, net | 711 | |  |  | 7,473 | |  |  | 8,184 | |  |  | 760 | |  |  | 7,188 | |  |  | 7,948 | |  |
| Residual interest | — | |  |  | 639 | |  |  | 639 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 674 | |  |  | 674 | |  |
| Financing receivables, net | $ | 711 |  |  | $ | 8,112 |  |  | $ | 8,823 |  |  | $ | 760 |  |  | $ | 7,862 |  |  | $ | 8,622 |  |
| Short-term | $ | 711 |  |  | $ | 3,762 |  |  | $ | 4,473 |  |  | $ | 760 |  |  | $ | 3,638 |  |  | $ | 4,398 |  |
| Long-term | $ | — |  |  | $ | 4,350 |  |  | $ | 4,350 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 4,224 |  |  | $ | 4,224 |  |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (a) | Customer receivables, gross includes amounts due from customers under revolving loans, fixed-term loans, fixed-term sales-type or direct financing leases, and accrued interest. |

The following tables present the changes in allowance for financing receivable losses for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Revolving** | | |  | **Fixed-term** | | |  | **Total** | | |  | **Revolving** | | |  | **Fixed-term** | | |  | **Total** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Allowance for financing receivable losses:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| *Balances at beginning of period* | $ | 70 |  |  | $ | 73 |  |  | $ | 143 |  |  | $ | 77 |  |  | $ | 62 |  |  | $ | 139 |  |
| Charge-offs, net of recoveries | (15 | | ) |  | (9 | | ) |  | (24 | | ) |  | (19 | | ) |  | (12 | | ) |  | (31 | | ) |
| Provision charged to income statement | 12 | |  |  | 7 | |  |  | 19 | |  |  | 17 | |  |  | 1 | |  |  | 18 | |  |
| *Balances at end of period* | $ | 67 |  |  | $ | 71 |  |  | $ | 138 |  |  | $ | 75 |  |  | $ | 51 |  |  | $ | 126 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Revolving** | | |  | **Fixed-term** | | |  | **Total** | | |  | **Revolving** | | |  | **Fixed-term** | | |  | **Total** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Allowance for financing receivable losses:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| *Balances at beginning of period* | $ | 75 |  |  | $ | 61 |  |  | $ | 136 |  |  | $ | 81 |  |  | $ | 64 |  |  | $ | 145 |  |
| Charge-offs, net of recoveries | (35 | | ) |  | (12 | | ) |  | (47 | | ) |  | (39 | | ) |  | (17 | | ) |  | (56 | | ) |
| Provision charged to income statement | 27 | |  |  | 22 | |  |  | 49 | |  |  | 33 | |  |  | 4 | |  |  | 37 | |  |
| *Balances at end of period* | $ | 67 |  |  | $ | 71 |  |  | $ | 138 |  |  | $ | 75 |  |  | $ | 51 |  |  | $ | 126 |  |

22

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

*Aging*

The following table presents the aging of the Company’s customer financing receivables, gross, including accrued interest, segregated by class, as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Current** | | |  | **Past Due 1 — 90 Days** | | |  | **Past Due >90 Days** | | |  | **Total** | | |  | **Current** | | |  | **Past Due 1 — 90 Days** | | |  | **Past Due >90 Days** | | |  | **Total** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Revolving — DPA | $ | 537 |  |  | $ | 47 |  |  | $ | 18 |  |  | $ | 602 |  |  | $ | 583 |  |  | $ | 53 |  |  | $ | 21 |  |  | $ | 657 |  |
| Revolving — DBC | 153 | |  |  | 19 | |  |  | 4 | |  |  | 176 | |  |  | 155 | |  |  | 19 | |  |  | 4 | |  |  | 178 | |  |
| Fixed-term — Consumer and Commercial | 6,749 | |  |  | 688 | |  |  | 107 | |  |  | 7,544 | |  |  | 6,282 | |  |  | 878 | |  |  | 89 | |  |  | 7,249 | |  |
| Total customer receivables, gross | $ | 7,439 |  |  | $ | 754 |  |  | $ | 129 |  |  | $ | 8,322 |  |  | $ | 7,020 |  |  | $ | 950 |  |  | $ | 114 |  |  | $ | 8,084 |  |

Aging is likely to fluctuate year to year as a result of the variability in volume of large transactions entered into over the period, and the administrative processes that accompany those larger transactions. As such, fluctuations in aging do not necessarily indicate a material change in the credit quality of the portfolio.

*Credit Quality*

The following table presents customer receivables, gross, including accrued interest, by credit quality indicator segregated by class, as of the dates indicated. The categories shown in the table below segregate customer receivables based on the relative degrees of credit risk. The credit quality indicators for DPA revolving accounts are measured primarily as of each quarter-end date, while all other indicators are generally updated on a periodic basis.

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Higher** | | |  | **Mid** | | |  | **Lower** | | |  | **Total** | | |  | **Higher** | | |  | **Mid** | | |  | **Lower** | | |  | **Total** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Revolving — DPA | $ | 121 |  |  | $ | 178 |  |  | $ | 303 |  |  | $ | 602 |  |  | $ | 128 |  |  | $ | 192 |  |  | $ | 337 |  |  | $ | 657 |  |
| Revolving — DBC | $ | 45 |  |  | $ | 54 |  |  | $ | 77 |  |  | $ | 176 |  |  | $ | 47 |  |  | $ | 54 |  |  | $ | 77 |  |  | $ | 178 |  |
| Fixed-term — Consumer and Commercial | $ | 4,377 |  |  | $ | 1,892 |  |  | $ | 1,275 |  |  | $ | 7,544 |  |  | $ | 3,980 |  |  | $ | 1,984 |  |  | $ | 1,285 |  |  | $ | 7,249 |  |

For DPA revolving receivables shown in the table above, the Company makes credit decisions based on proprietary scorecards, which include the customer’s credit history, payment history, credit usage, and other credit agency-related elements. The higher quality category includes prime accounts generally of a higher credit quality that are comparable to U.S. customer FICO scores of 720 or above. The mid-category represents the mid-tier accounts that are comparable to U.S. customer FICO scores from 660 to 719. The lower category is generally sub-prime and represents lower credit quality accounts that are comparable to U.S. customer FICO scores below 660. For the DBC revolving receivables and fixed-term commercial receivables shown in the table above, an internal grading system is utilized that assigns a credit level score based on a number of considerations, including liquidity, operating performance, and industry outlook. The grading criteria and classifications for the fixed-term products differ from those for the revolving products as loss experience varies between these product and customer groups. The credit quality categories cannot be compared between the different classes as loss experience varies substantially between the classes.

23

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

*Leases*

Interest income on sales-type lease receivables was $66 million and $130 million for the three and six months ended August 2, 2019, respectively.

The following table presents the net revenue, cost of net revenue, and gross margin recognized at the commencement date of sales-type leases for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| Net revenue *—* products | $ | 223 |  |  | $ | 353 |  |
| Cost of net revenue *—* products | 179 | |  |  | 260 | |  |
| Gross margin *—* products | $ | 44 |  |  | $ | 93 |  |

The following table presents the future maturity of the Company’s fixed-term customer leases and associated financing payments, and reconciles the undiscounted cash flows to the customer receivables, gross recognized on the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position as of the date indicated:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | |
|  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |
| **Fiscal Years** | (in millions) | | |
| Fiscal 2020 (remaining six months) | $ | 1,488 |  |
| Fiscal 2021 | 2,115 | |  |
| Fiscal 2022 | 1,322 | |  |
| Fiscal 2023 | 542 | |  |
| Fiscal 2024 and beyond | 198 | |  |
| **Total undiscounted cash flows** | 5,665 | |  |
| Fixed-term loans | 2,373 | |  |
| Revolving loans | 778 | |  |
| Less: unearned income | (494 | | ) |
| **Total customer receivables, gross** | $ | 8,322 |  |

*Disclosure related to periods prior to adoption of the new lease standard*—Future maturities of minimum lease and associated financing payments as of February 1, 2019 were as follows: $2.6 billion in Fiscal 2020; $1.7 billion in Fiscal 2021; $0.9 billion in Fiscal 2022; $0.3 billion in Fiscal 2023; and $0.1 billion in Fiscal 2024 and beyond. Future maturities and associated financing payments referenced herein represent the aggregate payments under the customer lease contract.

24

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**Operating Leases**

The following table presents the components of the Company’s operating lease portfolio included in Property, plant, and equipment, net as of the date indicated:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | |
|  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | |
| Equipment under operating lease, gross | $ | 455 |  |
| Less: accumulated depreciation | (29 | | ) |
| Equipment under operating lease, net | $ | 426 |  |

As of February 1, 2019, the Company’s equipment under operating lease, net was immaterial.

Operating lease income relating to lease payments was $27 million and $31 million for the three and six months ended August 2, 2019, respectively. Depreciation expense was $21 million and $24 million for the three and six months ended August 2, 2019, respectively.

The following table presents the future payments to be received by the Company as lessor in operating lease contracts as of the date indicated:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | |
|  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |
| **Fiscal Years** | (in millions) | | |
| Fiscal 2020 (remaining six months) | $ | 79 |  |
| Fiscal 2021 | 140 | |  |
| Fiscal 2022 | 132 | |  |
| Fiscal 2023 | 55 | |  |
| Fiscal 2024 and beyond | 3 | |  |
| **Total** | $ | 409 |  |

25

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**DFS Debt**

The Company maintains programs that facilitate the funding of leases, loans, and other alternative payment structures in the capital markets. For DFS debt under securitization programs, the Company’s risk of loss is limited to transferred lease and loan payments and associated equipment, and the credit holders under these programs have no recourse to the Company. The following table presents DFS debt as of the dates indicated. The table excludes the allocated portion of the Company’s other borrowings, which represents the additional amount considered to fund the DFS business.

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| *DFS U.S. debt:* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Securitization facilities | $ | 2,287 |  |  | $ | 1,914 |  |
| Fixed-term securitization offerings | 2,438 | |  |  | 2,303 | |  |
| Other | 201 | |  |  | 223 | |  |
| **Total DFS U.S. debt** | 4,926 | |  |  | 4,440 | |  |
| *DFS international debt:* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Securitization facility | 690 | |  |  | 584 | |  |
| Other borrowings | 831 | |  |  | 708 | |  |
| Note payable | 198 | |  |  | 197 | |  |
| **Total DFS international debt** | 1,719 | |  |  | 1,489 | |  |
| **Total DFS debt** | $ | 6,645 |  |  | $ | 5,929 |  |
| **Total short-term DFS debt** | $ | 3,703 |  |  | $ | 3,113 |  |
| **Total long-term DFS debt** | $ | 2,942 |  |  | $ | 2,816 |  |

*DFS U.S. Debt*

*Securitization Facilities***—**The Company maintains separate securitization facilities in the United States for fixed-term leases and loans and for revolving loans. This debt is collateralized solely by the U.S. loan and lease payments and associated equipment in the facilities. The debt has a variable interest rate and the duration of the debt is based on the terms of the underlying loan and lease payment streams. As of August 2, 2019, the total debt capacity related to the U.S. securitization facilities was $3.9 billion. The Company enters into interest swap agreements to effectively convert a portion of its securitization debt from a floating rate to a fixed rate. See Note 7 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information about interest rate swaps.

The Company’s U.S. securitization facility for revolving loans is effective through June 25, 2022. The Company’s two U.S. securitization facilities for fixed-term leases and loans are effective through February 22, 2020 and July 26, 2022, respectively. Subsequent to August 2, 2019, the Company renewed one of its facilities to extend the effective date from February 22, 2020 to August 22, 2021, and to increase the total U.S. securitization debt capacity by $0.1 billion.

The securitization facilities contain standard structural features related to the performance of the securitized receivables, which include defined credit losses, delinquencies, average credit scores, and minimum collection requirements. In the event one or more of these criteria are not met and the Company is unable to restructure the facility, no further funding of receivables will be permitted and the timing of the Company’s expected cash flows from over-collateralization will be delayed. As of August 2, 2019, these criteria were met.

*Fixed-Term Securitization Offerings***—**The Company periodically issues asset-backed debt securities under fixed-term securitization programs to private investors. The asset-backed debt securities are collateralized solely by the U.S. fixed-term leases and loans in the offerings, which are held by Special Purpose Entities (“SPEs”), as discussed below. The interest rate on these securities is fixed and ranges from 2.14% to 3.97% per annum, and the duration of these securities is based on the terms of the underlying lease and loan payment streams.

26

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

*DFS International Debt*

*Securitization Facility***—**The Company maintains a securitization facility in Europe for fixed-term leases and loans. This facility is effective through December 21, 2020 and has a total debt capacity of $887 million as of August 2, 2019.

The securitization facility contains standard structural features related to the performance of the securitized receivables which include defined credit losses, delinquencies, average credit scores, and minimum collection requirements. In the event one or more of these criteria are not met and the Company is unable to restructure the program, no further funding of receivables will be permitted and the timing of the Company’s expected cash flows from over-collateralization will be delayed. As of August 2, 2019, these criteria were met.

*Other Borrowings***—**In connection with the Company’s international financing operations, the Company has entered into revolving structured financing debt programs related to its fixed-term lease and loan products sold in Canada, Europe, Australia, and New Zealand. The Canadian facility, which is collateralized solely by Canadian loan and lease payments and associated equipment, had a total debt capacity of $227 million as of August 2, 2019, and is effective through January 16, 2023. The European facility, which is collateralized solely by European loan and lease payments and associated equipment, had a total debt capacity of $665 million as of August 2, 2019, and is effective through December 14, 2020. The Australia and New Zealand facility, which is collateralized solely by Australia and New Zealand loan and lease payments and associated equipment, had a total debt capacity of $190 million as of August 2, 2019, and is effective through January 29, 2020.

*Note Payable***—** On November 27, 2017, the Company entered into an unsecured credit agreement to fund receivables in Mexico. As of August 2, 2019, the aggregate principal amount of the note payable is $198 million. The note bears interest at either the applicable London Interbank Offered Rate (“LIBOR”) plus 2.25%, for the borrowings denominated in U.S. dollars, or the Mexican Interbank Equilibrium Interest Rate (“TIIE”) plus 2.00%, for the borrowings denominated in Mexican pesos. The note will mature on December 1, 2020. Although the note is unsecured, the Company intends to manage the note in the same manner as its structured financing programs, so that the collections from loan and lease payments and associated equipment in Mexico will be used to pay down principal and interest of the note.

**Variable Interest Entities**

In connection with the securitization facilities and offerings discussed above, the Company transfers certain U.S. and European loan and lease payments and associated equipment to SPEs that meet the definition of a Variable Interest Entity (“VIE”) and are consolidated, along with the associated debt detailed above, into the Consolidated Financial Statements, as the Company is the primary beneficiary of those VIEs. The SPEs are bankruptcy-remote legal entities with separate assets and liabilities. The purpose of the SPEs is to facilitate the funding of loan and lease payments and associated equipment in the capital markets.

The following table presents financing receivables and equipment under operating leases, net held by the consolidated VIEs as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| *Assets held by consolidated VIEs, net:* |  | |  |  |  | |  |
| Short-term, net | $ | 3,072 |  |  | $ | 2,940 |  |
| Long-term, net | 3,011 | |  |  | 2,508 | |  |
| Assets held by consolidated VIEs, net | $ | 6,083 |  |  | $ | 5,448 |  |

Loan and lease payments and associated equipment transferred via securitization through SPEs were $1.3 billion and $1.2 billion for the three months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018, respectively, and $2.8 billion and $2.5 billion for the six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018, respectively.

27

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

Some of the SPEs have entered into financing arrangements with multi-seller conduits that, in turn, issue asset-backed debt securities in the capital markets. The DFS debt outstanding, which is collateralized by the loan and lease payments and associated equipment held by the consolidated VIEs, was $5.4 billion and $4.8 billion as of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, respectively. The Company’s risk of loss related to securitized receivables is limited to the amount by which the Company’s right to receive collections for assets securitized exceeds the amount required to pay interest, principal, and fees and expenses related to the asset-backed securities. The Company provides credit enhancement to the securitization in the form of over-collateralization.

**Customer Receivable Sales**

To manage certain concentrations of customer credit exposure, the Company may sell selected fixed-term customer receivables to unrelated third parties on a periodic basis. The amount of customer receivables sold was $246 million and $271 million for the six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018, respectively.

28

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 5 — LEASES**

The Company enters into leasing transactions in which the Company is lessee. These lease contracts are typically classified as operating leases. The Company’s lease contracts are generally for office buildings used to conduct its business, and the determination of whether such contracts contain leases generally does not require significant estimates or judgments. The Company also leases certain global logistics warehouses, employee vehicles, and equipment. As of August 2, 2019, the remaining terms of the Company’s leases range from one year to 27 years.

The Company also enters into leasing transactions in which the Company is lessor, primarily through customer financing arrangements offered through DFS. DFS originates leases that are primarily classified as either sales-type leases or operating leases. See Note 4 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for more information on the DFS lease portfolio and related lease disclosures.

In adopting the new lease standard discussed in Note 1 and Note 2 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements, the Company elected to apply a transition method that does not require the retrospective application to periods prior to adoption. Financial information associated with the Company’s leases in which the Company is lessee is contained in this footnote. As of August 2, 2019, there were no material finance leases for which the Company was a lessee.

The following table presents components of lease costs included in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Income (Loss) for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| Operating lease costs | $ | 126 |  |  | $ | 243 |  |
| Variable costs | 41 | |  |  | 79 | |  |
| Total lease costs | $ | 167 |  |  | $ | 322 |  |

During the six months ended August 2, 2019, sublease income, finance lease costs, and short-term lease costs were immaterial.

The following table presents supplemental information related to operating leases included in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position as of the date indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Classification** |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |
|  |  |  | (in millions, except for term and discount rate) | | |
| Operating lease ROU assets | Other non-current assets |  | $ | 1,630 |  |
|  |  |  |  | | |
| Current operating lease liabilities | Accrued and other current liabilities |  | $ | 412 |  |
| Non-current operating lease liabilities | Other non-current liabilities |  | 1,234 | |  |
| Total operating lease liabilities |  |  | $ | 1,646 |  |
|  |  |  |  | | |
| Weighted-average remaining lease term (in years) |  |  | 8.82 | |  |
| Weighted-average discount rate |  |  | 3.99 | | % |

29

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

The following table presents supplemental cash flow information related to leases for the period indicated:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | |
|  |  |  |  |
|  | **Six Months Ended** | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | |
| Cash paid for amounts included in the measurement of lease liabilities - operating cash outflows from operating leases | $ | 241 |  |
|  |  | | |
| ROU assets obtained in exchange for new operating lease liabilities | $ | 254 |  |

The following table presents the future maturity of the Company’s operating lease liabilities under non-cancelable leases and reconciles the undiscounted cash flows for these leases to the lease liability recognized on the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position as of the date indicated:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | |
|  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |
| **Fiscal Years** | (in millions) | | |
| Fiscal 2020 (remaining six months) | $ | 224 |  |
| Fiscal 2021 | 419 | |  |
| Fiscal 2022 | 321 | |  |
| Fiscal 2023 | 234 | |  |
| Fiscal 2024 | 153 | |  |
| Thereafter | 696 | |  |
| Total lease payments | $ | 2,047 |  |
| Less: Imputed interest | (401 | | ) |
| Total | $ | 1,646 |  |
| Current operating lease liabilities | $ | 412 |  |
| Non-current operating lease liabilities | $ | 1,234 |  |

The amount of future lease commitments after Fiscal 2024 is primarily for the ground lease on VMware, Inc.’s Palo Alto, California headquarter facilities, which expires in Fiscal 2047.

As of August 2, 2019, the Company has additional operating leases that have not yet commenced of $393 million. These operating leases will commence during Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2021 with lease terms of one year to 16 years.

*Disclosure related to periods prior to adoption of the new lease standard*

Prior to the adoption of the new lease standard, the Company had the following future minimum lease payments under non-cancelable leases:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | |
|  |  |  |  |
|  | **February 1, 2019** | | |
| **Fiscal Years** | (in millions) | | |
| Fiscal 2020 | $ | 371 |  |
| Fiscal 2021 | 314 | |  |
| Fiscal 2022 | 240 | |  |
| Fiscal 2023 | 175 | |  |
| Fiscal 2024 | 113 | |  |
| Thereafter | 643 | |  |
| Total | $ | 1,856 |  |

30

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 6 — DEBT**

The following table presents the Company’s outstanding debt as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| **Secured Debt** |  | | |  |  | | |
| Senior Secured Credit Facilities: |  | | |  |  | | |
| 4.24% Term Loan B Facility due September 2023 | $ | 4,913 |  |  | $ | 4,938 |  |
| 4.16% Term Loan A-2 Facility due September 2021 | — | |  |  | 4,116 | |  |
| 3.99% Term Loan A-4 Facility due December 2023 | 1,009 | |  |  | 1,650 | |  |
| 4.25% Term Loan A-5 Facility due December 2019 | — | |  |  | 2,016 | |  |
| 4.07% Term Loan A-6 Facility due March 2024 | 3,588 | |  |  | — | |  |
| First Lien Notes: |  | | |  |  | | |
| 3.48% due June 2019 | — | |  |  | 3,750 | |  |
| 4.42% due June 2021 | 4,500 | |  |  | 4,500 | |  |
| 5.45% due June 2023 | 3,750 | |  |  | 3,750 | |  |
| 4.00% due July 2024 | 1,000 | |  |  | — | |  |
| 6.02% due June 2026 | 4,500 | |  |  | 4,500 | |  |
| 4.90% due October 2026 | 1,750 | |  |  | — | |  |
| 5.30% due October 2029 | 1,750 | |  |  | — | |  |
| 8.10% due July 2036 | 1,500 | |  |  | 1,500 | |  |
| 8.35% due July 2046 | 2,000 | |  |  | 2,000 | |  |
| **Unsecured Debt** |  | | |  |  | | |
| Unsecured Notes and Debentures: |  | | |  |  | | |
| 5.875% due June 2019 | — | |  |  | 600 | |  |
| 4.625% due April 2021 | 400 | |  |  | 400 | |  |
| 7.10% due April 2028 | 300 | |  |  | 300 | |  |
| 6.50% due April 2038 | 388 | |  |  | 388 | |  |
| 5.40% due September 2040 | 264 | |  |  | 264 | |  |
| Senior Notes: |  | | |  |  | | |
| 5.875% due June 2021 | 1,625 | |  |  | 1,625 | |  |
| 7.125% due June 2024 | 1,625 | |  |  | 1,625 | |  |
| EMC Notes: |  | | |  |  | | |
| 2.650% due June 2020 | 2,000 | |  |  | 2,000 | |  |
| 3.375% due June 2023 | 1,000 | |  |  | 1,000 | |  |
| VMware Notes: |  | | |  |  | | |
| 2.30% due August 2020 | 1,250 | |  |  | 1,250 | |  |
| 2.95% due August 2022 | 1,500 | |  |  | 1,500 | |  |
| 3.90% due August 2027 | 1,250 | |  |  | 1,250 | |  |
| **DFS Debt (Note 4)** | 6,645 | |  |  | 5,929 | |  |
| **Other** |  | | |  |  | | |
| 4.51% Margin Loan Facility due April 2022 | 4,000 | |  |  | 3,350 | |  |
| Other | 85 | |  |  | 38 | |  |
| **Total debt, principal amount** | $ | 52,592 |  |  | $ | 54,239 |  |

31

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| **Total debt, principal amount** | $ | 52,592 |  |  | $ | 54,239 |  |
| Unamortized discount, net of unamortized premium | (252 | | ) |  | (271 | | ) |
| Debt issuance costs | (418 | | ) |  | (447 | | ) |
| **Total debt, carrying value** | $ | 51,922 |  |  | $ | 53,521 |  |
| **Total short-term debt, carrying value** | $ | 5,949 |  |  | $ | 4,320 |  |
| **Total long-term debt, carrying value** | $ | 45,973 |  |  | $ | 49,201 |  |

During the six months ended August 2, 2019, the Company repaid the remaining principal amount of approximately $1,277 million of its Term Loan A-2 Facility described below under “Refinancing Transactions,” $620 million principal amount of its Term Loan A-4 Facility, $600 million principal amount of its 5.875% senior notes due June 2019 upon maturity, and approximately $91 million of principal amortization under its term loan facilities. Additionally, during the six months ended August 2, 2019, the Company issued an additional $0.7 billion, net, in DFS debt to support the expansion of its financing receivables portfolio.

**Refinancing Transactions**

On March 7, 2019, the Company amended the Margin Loan Agreement to increase the aggregate principal amount of borrowings under the Margin Loan Facility by $650 million.

On March 13, 2019, the Company entered into an amendment to the credit agreement for the Senior Secured Credit Facilities to obtain a new senior secured Term Loan A-6 Facility in order to refinance the $5 billion aggregate principal amount of debt incurred in connection with the Class V transaction described in Note 14 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements. The Term Loan A-6 Facility aggregate principal amount of $3,634 million matures on March 13, 2024, of which $2,839 million aggregate principal amount represents the amounts outstanding under the Term Loan A-2 Facility that rolled-over into the new facility. Immediately after the rollover, an aggregate principal amount of $1,277 million remained outstanding under the Term Loan A-2 Facility. The Term Loan A-6 Facility amortizes quarterly and bears interest at the London Interbank Offered Rate (“LIBOR”) plus an applicable margin ranging from 1.25% to 2.00% or a base rate plus an applicable margin of 0.25% to 1.00%.

On March 20, 2019, Dell International L.L.C. and EMC Corporation, both which are wholly-owned subsidiaries of Dell Technologies Inc., completed a private offering of multiple series of First Lien Notes in an aggregate principal amount of $4.5 billion. The principal amount, interest rate, and maturity of each series of such First Lien Notes were $1,000 million of 4.00% First Lien Notes due July 15, 2024, $1,750 million of 4.90% First Lien Notes due October 1, 2026, and $1,750 million of 5.30% First Lien Notes due October 1, 2029.

A majority of the proceeds from the First Lien Notes issued on March 20, 2019 was used to repay all of the outstanding $3,750 million First Lien Notes due June 2019. In addition, proceeds of approximately $800 million of borrowings under the new Term Loan A-6 Facility, the proceeds of the $650 million increase in the Margin Loan Facility, and a portion of the proceeds from the 2019 First Lien Notes were used to repay all of the Company’s outstanding amounts under the Term Loan A-5 Facility due December 2019. During the three months ended May 3, 2019, the remaining proceeds available from the 2019 First Lien Notes were used to repay $550 million of outstanding amounts under the Term Loan A-2 Facility and to pay related premiums, accrued interest, fees, and expenses. The Term Loan A-2 Facility was subsequently paid off as of August 2, 2019.

The refinancing and amendments were evaluated in accordance with FASB ASC 470, “Debt-Modifications and Extinguishments.” The amendment to the Margin Loan Agreement and the term debt refinancing were accounted for as modifications for all existing lenders and as new issuances for new lenders. The First Lien Notes issued on March 20, 2019 were accounted for as new issuances for all lenders, and repayment of the Company’s outstanding amounts under the Term Loan A-5 Facility was accounted for as an extinguishment. During the three months ended May 3, 2019, the Company capitalized $74.5 million in new fees paid to creditors as a result of the modifications and new issuances. In addition, the Company recognized expenses of $32.3 million in unamortized costs and $7.1 million in new third-party costs during the three months ended May 3, 2019.

32

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**Secured Debt**

*Senior Secured Credit Facilities*—The Company has entered into a credit agreement that provides for senior secured credit facilities (the “Senior Secured Credit Facilities”) comprising (a) term loan facilities and (b) a senior secured Revolving Credit Facility, which includes capacity for up to $0.5 billion of letters of credit and for borrowings of up to $0.4 billion under swing-line loans.

As of August 2, 2019, available borrowings under the Revolving Credit Facility totaled $4.5 billion. The Senior Secured Credit Facilities provide that the borrowers have the right at any time, subject to customary conditions, to request incremental term loans or incremental revolving commitments.

Borrowings under the Senior Secured Credit Facilities bear interest at a rate per annum equal to an applicable margin, plus, at the borrowers’ option, either (a) a base rate, which, under the Term Loan B Facility, is subject to an interest rate floor of 1.75% per annum, and under all other borrowings is subject to an interest rate floor of 0% per annum, or (b) LIBOR, which, under the Term Loan B Facility, is subject to an interest rate floor of 0.75% per annum, and under all other borrowings is subject to an interest rate floor of 0% per annum. Interest is payable, in the case of loans bearing interest based on LIBOR, at the end of each interest period (but at least every three months), in arrears and, in the case of loans bearing interest based on the base rate, quarterly in arrears.

The Term Loan B Facility amortizes in equal quarterly installments in aggregate annual amounts equal to 1% of the original principal amount. The Term Loan A-4 Facility amortizes in equal quarterly installments in aggregate annual amounts equal to 5% of the original principal amount in each of the first four years after the facility closing date of December 20, 2018, and 80% of the original principal amount in the fifth year after December 20, 2018. The Term Loan A-6 Facility amortizes in equal quarterly installments in aggregate annual amounts equal to 5% of the original principal amount in each of the first four years after the facility closing date of March 13, 2019, and 80% of the original principal amount in the fifth year after March 13, 2019. The Revolving Credit Facility has no amortization.

The borrowers may voluntarily repay outstanding loans under the term loan facilities and the Revolving Credit Facility at any time without premium or penalty, other than customary “breakage” costs.

All obligations of the borrowers under the Senior Secured Credit Facilities and certain swap agreements, cash management arrangements, and certain letters of credit provided by any lender or agent party to the Senior Secured Credit Facilities or any of its affiliates and certain other persons are secured by (a) a first-priority security interest in certain tangible and intangible assets of the borrowers and the guarantors and (b) a first-priority pledge of 100% of the capital stock of the borrowers, Dell Inc., a wholly‑owned subsidiary of the Company (“Dell”), and each wholly-owned material restricted subsidiary of the borrowers and the guarantors, in each case subject to certain thresholds, exceptions, and permitted liens.

*First Lien Notes*— The senior secured notes (collectively, the “First Lien Notes”) were issued on June 1, 2016 and March 20, 2019 in an aggregate principal amount of $20.0 billion and $4.5 billion, respectively. As stated above, the Company used a portion of the $4.5 billion proceeds to repay all of the outstanding $3,750 million First Lien Notes due June 2019. Interest on these borrowings is payable semiannually. The First Lien Notes are secured on a pari passu basis with the Senior Secured Credit Facilities, on a first-priority basis by substantially all of the tangible and intangible assets of the issuers and guarantors that secure obligations under the Senior Secured Credit Facilities, including pledges of all capital stock of the issuers, Dell, and certain wholly-owned material subsidiaries of the issuers and the guarantors, subject to certain exceptions.

The Company has agreed to use commercially reasonable efforts to register with the SEC notes having terms substantially identical to the terms of the First Lien Notes as part of an offer to exchange such registered notes for the First Lien Notes. The Company will be obligated to pay additional interest on the First Lien Notes if it fails to consummate such an exchange offer within five years after the closing date of the EMC merger transaction, in the case of the First Lien Notes issued on June 1, 2016, and within five years after their issue date, in the case of the First Lien Notes issued on March 20, 2019.

.

33

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

*China Revolving Credit Facility* — During the three months ended May 3, 2019, the Company renewed its credit agreement (the “China Revolving Credit Facility”) with a bank lender for a secured revolving loan facility in an aggregate principal amount not to exceed $500 million at an interest rate of LIBOR plus 0.6% per annum. The facility will expire on February 26, 2020. As of August 2, 2019, there were no outstanding borrowings under the China Revolving Credit Facility.

**Unsecured Debt**

*Unsecured Notes and Debentures* — The Company has outstanding unsecured notes and debentures (collectively, the “Unsecured Notes and Debentures”) that were issued by Dell prior to the acquisition of Dell by Dell Technologies Inc. in the going-private transaction that closed in October 2013. Interest on these borrowings is payable semiannually.

*Senior Notes*— The senior unsecured notes (collectively, the “Senior Notes”) were issued on June 22, 2016 in an aggregate principal amount of $3.25 billion. Interest on these borrowings is payable semiannually.

*EMC Notes*— On September 7, 2016, EMC had outstanding $2.5 billion aggregate principal amount of its 1.875% Notes due June 2018, which the Company fully repaid during the three months ended August 3, 2018, $2.0 billion aggregate principal amount of its 2.650% Notes due June 2020, and $1.0 billion aggregate principal amount of its 3.375% Notes due June 2023 (collectively, the “EMC Notes”). Interest on these borrowings is payable semiannually.

*VMware Notes*— On August 21, 2017, VMware, Inc. completed a public offering of unsecured senior notes in the aggregate amount of $4.0 billion, consisting of outstanding principal due on the following dates: $1.25 billion due August 21, 2020, $1.5 billion due August 21, 2022, and $1.25 billion due August 21, 2027 (collectively, the “VMware Notes”). The VMware Notes bear interest, payable semiannually, at annual rates of 2.30%, 2.95%, and 3.90%, respectively. None of the net proceeds of such borrowings will be made available to support the operations or satisfy any corporate purposes of Dell Technologies, other than the operations and corporate purposes of VMware, Inc. and VMware, Inc.’s subsidiaries.

*VMware Revolving Credit Facility*— On September 12, 2017, VMware, Inc. entered into an unsecured credit agreement, establishing a revolving credit facility (the “VMware Revolving Credit Facility”) with a syndicate of lenders that provides the company with a borrowing capacity of up to $1.0 billion which may be used for VMware, Inc. general corporate purposes. Commitments under the VMware Revolving Credit Facility are available for a period of five years, which may be extended, subject to the satisfaction of certain conditions, by up to two one year periods. The credit agreement contains certain representations, warranties, and covenants. Commitment fees, interest rates, and other terms of borrowing under the VMware Revolving Credit Facility may vary based on VMware, Inc.’s external credit ratings. None of the net proceeds of such borrowings will be made available to support the operations or satisfy any corporate purposes of Dell Technologies, other than the operations and corporate purposes of VMware, Inc. and VMware, Inc.’s subsidiaries. As of August 2, 2019, there were no outstanding borrowings under the VMware Revolving Credit Facility.

**DFS Debt**

See Note 4 and Note 7 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements, respectively, for discussion of DFS debt and the interest rate swap agreements that hedge a portion of that debt.

**Other**

*Margin Loan Facility*— On April 12, 2017, the Company entered into the Margin Loan Facility in an aggregate principal amount of $2.0 billion. In connection with the Class V transaction, on December 20, 2018, the Company amended the Margin Loan Facility to increase the aggregate principal amount to $3.35 billion. In connection with obtaining the Term Loan A-6 Facility, the Company increased the aggregate principal amount of the facility to $4.0 billion. VMW Holdco LLC, a wholly-owned subsidiary of EMC, is the borrower under the Margin Loan Facility, which is secured by 60 million shares of Class B common stock of VMware, Inc. and 20 million shares of Class A common stock of VMware, Inc. Loans under the Margin Loan Facility bear interest at a rate per annum payable, at the borrower’s option, either at (a) a base rate plus 1.25% per annum or (b) a LIBOR-based rate plus 2.25% per annum. Interest under the Margin Loan Facility is payable quarterly.

34

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

The Margin Loan Facility will mature in April 2022. The borrower may voluntarily repay outstanding loans under the Margin Loan Facility at any time without premium or penalty, other than customary “breakage” costs, subject to certain minimum threshold amounts for prepayment.

*Pivotal Revolving Credit Facility* — On September 7, 2017, Pivotal entered into a credit agreement (the “Pivotal Revolving Credit Facility”) that provides for a senior secured revolving loan facility in an aggregate principal amount not to exceed $100 million. The credit facility contains customary representations, warranties, and covenants, including financial covenants. The credit agreement will expire on September 8, 2020, unless it is terminated earlier. None of the net proceeds of borrowings under the facility will be made available to support the operations or satisfy any corporate purposes of Dell Technologies, other than the operations and corporate purposes of Pivotal and Pivotal’s subsidiaries. As of August 2, 2019, there were no outstanding borrowings under the Pivotal Revolving Credit Facility.

**Aggregate Future Maturities**

The following table presents the aggregate future maturities of the Company’s debt as of August 2, 2019 for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Maturities by Fiscal Year** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **2020 (remaining six months)** | | |  | **2021** | | |  | **2022** | | |  | **2023** | | |  | **2024** | | |  | **Thereafter** | | |  | **Total** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Senior Secured Credit Facilities and First Lien Notes | $ | 116 |  |  | $ | 174 |  |  | $ | 4,732 |  |  | $ | 290 |  |  | $ | 11,722 |  |  | $ | 13,226 |  |  | $ | 30,260 |  |
| Unsecured Notes and Debentures | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 400 | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 952 | |  |  | 1,352 | |  |
| Senior Notes and EMC Notes | — | |  |  | 2,000 | |  |  | 1,625 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 1,000 | |  |  | 1,625 | |  |  | 6,250 | |  |
| VMware Notes | — | |  |  | 1,250 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 1,500 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 1,250 | |  |  | 4,000 | |  |
| DFS Debt | 2,140 | |  |  | 3,051 | |  |  | 980 | |  |  | 438 | |  |  | 36 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 6,645 | |  |
| Margin Loan Facility | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 4,000 | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 4,000 | |  |
| Other | 13 | |  |  | 18 | |  |  | 7 | |  |  | 8 | |  |  | 7 | |  |  | 32 | |  |  | 85 | |  |
| Total maturities, principal amount | 2,269 | |  |  | 6,493 | |  |  | 7,744 | |  |  | 6,236 | |  |  | 12,765 | |  |  | 17,085 | |  |  | 52,592 | |  |
| Associated carrying value adjustments | — | |  |  | (5 | | ) |  | (78 | | ) |  | (28 | | ) |  | (142 | | ) |  | (417 | | ) |  | (670 | | ) |
| Total maturities, carrying value amount | $ | 2,269 |  |  | $ | 6,488 |  |  | $ | 7,666 |  |  | $ | 6,208 |  |  | $ | 12,623 |  |  | $ | 16,668 |  |  | $ | 51,922 |  |

*Covenants and Unrestricted Net Assets* ***—*** The credit agreement for the Senior Secured Credit Facilities contains customary negative covenants that generally limit the ability of Denali Intermediate Inc., a wholly-owned subsidiary of Dell Technologies (“Dell Intermediate”), Dell, and Dell’s and Denali Intermediate’s other restricted subsidiaries to incur debt, create liens, make fundamental changes, enter into asset sales, make certain investments, pay dividends or distribute or redeem certain equity interests, prepay or redeem certain debt, and enter into certain transactions with affiliates. The indenture governing the Senior Notes contains customary negative covenants that generally limit the ability of Denali Intermediate, Dell, and Dell’s and Denali Intermediate’s other restricted subsidiaries to incur additional debt or issue certain preferred shares, pay dividends on or make other distributions in respect of capital stock or make other restricted payments, make certain investments, sell or transfer certain assets, create liens on certain assets to secure debt, consolidate, merge, sell, or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all assets, enter into certain transactions with affiliates, and designate subsidiaries as unrestricted subsidiaries. The negative covenants under such credit agreements and indenture are subject to certain exceptions, qualifications, and “baskets.” The indentures governing the First Lien Notes, the Unsecured Notes and Debentures, and the EMC Notes variously impose limitations, subject to specified exceptions, on creating certain liens, entering into sale and lease-back transactions, and entering into certain asset sales. The foregoing credit agreements and indentures contain customary events of default, including failure to make required payments, failure to comply with covenants, and the occurrence of certain events of bankruptcy and insolvency.

35

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

As of August 2, 2019, the Company had certain consolidated subsidiaries that were designated as unrestricted subsidiaries for all purposes of the applicable credit agreements and the indentures governing the First Lien Notes and the Senior Notes. Substantially all of the net assets of the Company’s consolidated subsidiaries were restricted, with the exception of the Company’s unrestricted subsidiaries, primarily VMware, Inc., Pivotal, Secureworks, and their respective subsidiaries, as of August 2, 2019.

The Term Loan A-4 Facility, the Term Loan A-6 Facility, and the Revolving Credit Facility are subject to a first lien leverage ratio covenant that is tested at the end of each fiscal quarter of Dell with respect to Dell’s preceding four fiscal quarters. The Company was in compliance with all financial covenants as of August 2, 2019.

36

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 7 — DERIVATIVE INSTRUMENTS AND HEDGING ACTIVITIES**

As part of its risk management strategy, the Company uses derivative instruments, primarily foreign currency forward and option contracts and interest rate swaps, to hedge certain foreign currency and interest rate exposures, respectively.

The Company’s objective is to offset gains and losses resulting from these exposures with gains and losses on the derivative contracts used to hedge the exposures, thereby reducing volatility of earnings and protecting the fair values of assets and liabilities. The earnings effects of the derivative instruments are presented in the same income statement line items as the earnings effects of the hedged items. For derivatives designated as cash flow hedges, the Company assesses hedge effectiveness both at the onset of the hedge and at regular intervals throughout the life of the derivative. The Company does not have any derivatives designated as fair value hedges.

**Foreign Exchange Risk**

The Company uses foreign currency forward and option contracts designated as cash flow hedges to protect against the foreign currency exchange rate risks inherent in its forecasted transactions denominated in currencies other than the U.S. dollar. Hedge accounting is applied based upon the criteria established by accounting guidance for derivative instruments and hedging activities. The risk of loss associated with purchased options is limited to premium amounts paid for the option contracts. The risk of loss associated with forward contracts is equal to the exchange rate differential from the time the contract is entered into until the time it is settled. The majority of these contracts typically expire in twelve months or less.

During the six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018, the Company did not discontinue any cash flow hedges related to foreign exchange contracts that had a material impact on the Company’s results of operations due to the probability that the forecasted cash flows would not occur.

The Company uses forward contracts to hedge monetary assets and liabilities denominated in a foreign currency. These contracts generally expire in three months or less, are considered economic hedges, and are not designated for hedge accounting. The change in the fair value of these instruments represents a natural hedge as their gains and losses offset the changes in the underlying fair value of the monetary assets and liabilities due to movements in currency exchange rates.

In connection with expanded offerings of DFS in Europe, forward contracts are used to hedge financing receivables denominated in foreign currencies other than Euro. These contracts are not designated for hedge accounting and most expire within three years or less.

**Interest Rate Risk**

The Company uses interest rate swaps to hedge the variability in cash flows related to the interest rate payments on structured financing debt. The interest rate swaps economically convert the variable rate on the structured financing debt to a fixed interest rate to match the underlying fixed rate being received on fixed-term customer leases and loans. These contracts are not designated for hedge accounting and most expire within three years or less.

Interest rate swaps are utilized to manage the interest rate risk, at a portfolio level, associated with DFS operations in Europe. The interest rate swaps economically convert the fixed rate on financing receivables to a three-month Euribor floating rate basis in order to match the floating rate nature of the banks’ funding pool. These contracts are not designated for hedge accounting and most expire within five years or less.

The Company utilizes cross currency amortizing swaps to hedge the currency and interest rate risk exposure associated with the securitization program that was established in Europe in January 2017.  The cross currency swaps combine a Euro-based interest rate swap with a British Pound or U.S. Dollar foreign exchange forward contract in which the Company pays a fixed British Pound or U.S. Dollar amount and receives a floating amount in Euros linked to the one-month Euribor.  The notional value of the swaps amortizes in line with the expected cash flows and run-off of the securitized assets.  The swaps are not designated for hedge accounting and expire within five years or less.

37

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**Derivative Instruments**

*Notional Amounts of Outstanding Derivative Instruments*

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| *Foreign exchange contracts:* |  | |  |  |  | |  |
| Designated as cash flow hedging instruments | $ | 8,017 |  |  | $ | 7,573 |  |
| Non-designated as hedging instruments | 6,345 | |  |  | 6,129 | |  |
| Total | $ | 14,362 |  |  | $ | 13,702 |  |
| *Interest rate contracts:* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Non-designated as hedging instruments | $ | 3,121 |  |  | $ | 2,674 |  |

*Effect of Derivative Instruments Designated as Hedging Instruments on the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position and the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Income (Loss)*

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **Derivatives in Cash Flow Hedging Relationships** |  | **Gain (Loss) Recognized in Accumulated OCI, Net of Tax, on Derivatives** | | |  | **Location of Gain (Loss) Reclassified from Accumulated OCI into Income** |  | **Gain (Loss) Reclassified from Accumulated OCI into Income** | | |
|  |  | (in millions) | | |  |  |  | (in millions) | | |
| *For the three months ended August 2, 2019* | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  | |  |  | Total net revenue |  | $ | 68 |  |
| Foreign exchange contracts |  | $ | 105 |  |  | Total cost of net revenue |  | — | |  |
| Interest rate contracts |  | — | |  |  | Interest and other, net |  | — | |  |
| Total |  | $ | 105 |  |  |  |  | $ | 68 |  |
|  |  |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |
| *For the three months ended August 3, 2018* | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  | |  |  | Total net revenue |  | $ | 77 |  |
| Foreign exchange contracts |  | $ | 120 |  |  | Total cost of net revenue |  | — | |  |
| Interest rate contracts |  | — | |  |  | Interest and other, net |  | — | |  |
| Total |  | $ | 120 |  |  |  |  | $ | 77 |  |
|  |  |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |
| *For the six months ended August 2, 2019* | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  | |  |  | Total net revenue |  | $ | 126 |  |
| Foreign exchange contracts |  | $ | 257 |  |  | Total cost of net revenue |  | — | |  |
| Interest rate contracts |  | — | |  |  | Interest and other, net |  | — | |  |
| Total |  | $ | 257 |  |  |  |  | $ | 126 |  |
|  |  |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |
| *For the six months ended August 3, 2018* | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  | |  |  | Total net revenue |  | $ | 46 |  |
| Foreign exchange contracts |  | $ | 241 |  |  | Total cost of net revenue |  | — | |  |
| Interest rate contracts |  | — | |  |  | Interest and other, net |  | — | |  |
| Total |  | $ | 241 |  |  |  |  | $ | 46 |  |

38

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

*Effect of Derivative Instruments Not Designated as Hedging Instruments on the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Income (Loss)*

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | |  |  |
|  |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **Location of Gain (Loss) Recognized** |
|  |  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  |  |
| *Gain (Loss) Recognized:* |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  |
| Foreign exchange contracts |  | $ | 7 |  |  | $ | 75 |  |  | $ | (59 | ) |  | $ | 32 |  |  | Interest and other, net |
| Interest rate contracts |  | (15 | | ) |  | (1 | | ) |  | (22 | | ) |  | 1 | |  |  | Interest and other, net |
| Total |  | $ | (8 | ) |  | $ | 74 |  |  | $ | (81 | ) |  | $ | 33 |  |  |  |

39

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

*Fair Value of Derivative Instruments in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position*

The Company presents its foreign exchange derivative instruments on a net basis in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position due to the right of offset by its counterparties under master netting arrangements. The following tables present the fair value of those derivative instruments presented on a gross basis as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Other Current Assets** | | |  | **Other Non- Current Assets** | | |  | **Other Current Liabilities** | | |  | **Other Non-Current Liabilities** | | |  | **Total Fair Value** | | |
|  |  | | |  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | |  |  | | |
| *Derivatives designated as hedging instruments:* | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Foreign exchange contracts in an asset position | $ | 211 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 3 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 214 |  |
| Foreign exchange contracts in a liability position | (10 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (1 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (11 | | ) |
| Net asset (liability) | 201 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 2 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 203 | |  |
| *Derivatives not designated as hedging instruments:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Foreign exchange contracts in an asset position | 278 | |  |  | 1 | |  |  | 8 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 287 | |  |
| Foreign exchange contracts in a liability position | (238 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (23 | | ) |  | (2 | | ) |  | (263 | | ) |
| Interest rate contracts in an asset position | — | |  |  | 9 | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 9 | |  |
| Interest rate contracts in a liability position | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (21 | | ) |  | (21 | | ) |
| Net asset (liability) | 40 | |  |  | 10 | |  |  | (15 | | ) |  | (23 | | ) |  | 12 | |  |
| Total derivatives at fair value | $ | 241 |  |  | $ | 10 |  |  | $ | (13 | ) |  | $ | (23 | ) |  | $ | 215 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | **February 1, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Other Current Assets** | | |  | **Other Non- Current Assets** | | |  | **Other Current Liabilities** | | |  | **Other Non-Current Liabilities** | | |  | **Total Fair Value** | | |
|  |  | | |  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | |  |  | | |
| *Derivatives designated as hedging instruments:* | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Foreign exchange contracts in an asset position | $ | 45 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 29 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 74 |  |
| Foreign exchange contracts in a liability position | (19 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (20 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (39 | | ) |
| Net asset (liability) | 26 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 9 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 35 | |  |
| *Derivatives not designated as hedging instruments:* | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Foreign exchange contracts in an asset position | 178 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 57 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 235 | |  |
| Foreign exchange contracts in a liability position | (110 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (115 | | ) |  | (2 | | ) |  | (227 | | ) |
| Interest rate contracts in an asset position | — | |  |  | 3 | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 3 | |  |
| Interest rate contracts in a liability position | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (9 | | ) |  | (9 | | ) |
| Net asset (liability) | 68 | |  |  | 3 | |  |  | (58 | | ) |  | (11 | | ) |  | 2 | |  |
| Total derivatives at fair value | $ | 94 |  |  | $ | 3 |  |  | $ | (49 | ) |  | $ | (11 | ) |  | $ | 37 |  |

40

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

The following tables present the gross amounts of the Company’s derivative instruments, amounts offset due to master netting agreements with the Company’s counterparties, and the net amounts recognized in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Gross Amounts of Recognized Assets/ (Liabilities)** | | |  | **Gross Amounts Offset in the Statement of Financial Position** | | |  | **Net Amounts of Assets/ (Liabilities) Presented in the Statement of Financial Position** | | |  | **Gross Amounts not Offset in the Statement of Financial Position** | | | | | | |  | **Net Amount** | | |
|  | **Financial Instruments** | | |  | **Cash Collateral Received or Pledged** | | |  |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Derivative instruments:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Financial assets | $ | 510 |  |  | $ | (259 | ) |  | $ | 251 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 251 |  |
| Financial liabilities | (295 | | ) |  | 259 | |  |  | (36 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | 5 | |  |  | (31 | | ) |
| Total derivative instruments | $ | 215 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 215 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 5 |  |  | $ | 220 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | **February 1, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Gross Amounts of Recognized Assets/ (Liabilities)** | | |  | **Gross Amounts Offset in the Statement of Financial Position** | | |  | **Net Amounts of Assets/ (Liabilities) Presented in the Statement of Financial Position** | | |  | **Gross Amounts not Offset in the Statement of Financial Position** | | | | | | |  | **Net Amount** | | |
|  | **Financial Instruments** | | |  | **Cash Collateral Received or Pledged** | | |  |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Derivative instruments:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Financial assets | $ | 312 |  |  | $ | (215 | ) |  | $ | 97 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 97 |  |
| Financial liabilities | (275 | | ) |  | 215 | |  |  | (60 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | 4 | |  |  | (56 | | ) |
| Total derivative instruments | $ | 37 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 37 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 4 |  |  | $ | 41 |  |

41

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 8 — GOODWILL AND INTANGIBLE ASSETS**

**Goodwill**

The following table presents goodwill allocated to the Company’s business segments and changes in the carrying amount of goodwill as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Infrastructure Solutions Group** | | |  | **Client Solutions Group** | | |  | **VMware** | | |  | **Other Businesses (a)** | | |  | **Total** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Balance as of February 1, 2019* | $ | 15,199 |  |  | $ | 4,237 |  |  | $ | 16,419 |  |  | $ | 4,234 |  |  | $ | 40,089 |  |
| Goodwill acquired (b) | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 272 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 272 | |  |
| Impact of foreign currency translation | (123 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (33 | | ) |  | (156 | | ) |
| Goodwill impaired (c) | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (207 | | ) |  | (207 | | ) |
| *Balance as of August 2, 2019* | $ | 15,076 |  |  | $ | 4,237 |  |  | $ | 16,691 |  |  | $ | 3,994 |  |  | $ | 39,998 |  |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

(a) Other Businesses consists of offerings by Pivotal, Secureworks, RSA Security LLC (“RSA Security”), Virtustream Group Holdings, Inc. (“Virtustream”), and Boomi, Inc. (“Boomi”).

(b) VMware, Inc. acquisitions, as discussed below.

(c) The Company recognized a goodwill impairment charge related to Virtustream, as discussed below.

*VMware, Inc. Acquisitions* **—** During the three months ended August 2, 2019, VMware, Inc. completed the acquisition of Avi Networks, Inc., a provider of multi-cloud application delivery services. The total purchase price was $326 million, net of cash acquired of $9 million. The purchase price primarily included $94 million of identifiable intangible assets and $228 million of goodwill that is not expected to be deductible for tax purposes.

During the three months ended May 3, 2019, VMware, Inc. completed the acquisition of AetherPal, Inc., a provider of remote support solutions. The total purchase price was $45 million, which primarily included $12 million of identifiable intangible assets and $33 million of goodwill that is not expected to be deductible for tax purposes.

For each of the acquisitions, the initial allocation of the purchase price was based on preliminary valuations and assumptions and is subject to change within the measurement period. VMware, Inc. expects to finalize the allocation of the purchase price for each of the acquisitions as soon as practicable and not later than one year from the respective acquisition dates.

See Note 20 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for information regarding acquisition agreements entered into by VMware, Inc. subsequent to August 2, 2019.

*Goodwill Impairment Tests* **—**Goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible assets are tested for impairment annually during the third fiscal quarter and whenever events or circumstances may indicate that an impairment has occurred. Based on the results of the annual impairment test performed for the fiscal year ended February 1, 2019, which was a quantitative test for all goodwill reporting units, the fair values of each of the reporting units, except for the Virtustream reporting unit, exceeded their carrying values. Virtustream’s results, which are reported within the Company’s Other Businesses, do not meet the requirements for a reportable segment and are not material to the Company’s overall results. See Note 18 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional segment information.

Virtustream delivers an application management cloud platform for enterprise mission-critical workloads in the Infrastructure-as-a-Service market, and had approximately $0.4 billion in goodwill that was derived from the EMC merger transaction during the fiscal year ended February 3, 2017.

42

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

During fiscal year ended February 1, 2019, Virtustream forecasts were revised downward due to a resetting of the longer-term business model that is focused on a streamlined product portfolio. Based on the results of the annual impairment test performed for the fiscal year ended February 1, 2019, it was determined that the carrying value of the Virtustream reporting unit exceeded its fair value, and, as such, a goodwill impairment charge of approximately $190 million was recognized during the three months ended November 2, 2018 to write the goodwill down to a fair value of approximately $200 million.

During the three months ended August 2, 2019, strategic alternatives were evaluated for Virtustream that provided new fair value indicators and resulted in the need to perform an impairment assessment of both long-lived assets and goodwill. Based on the results of the impairment assessment, it was determined that the fair value of the asset group was less than its carrying value. A gross impairment charge of $619 million and $524 million net of tax benefits, was recognized related to Virtustream intangible assets, property, plant, and equipment, and remaining goodwill during the three months ended August 2, 2019. The gross impairment charge related to Virtustream was classified in selling, general, and administrative in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Income (Loss). Additionally, required deferred tax adjustments associated with the intangible assets and property, plant, and equipment resulted in the recognition of an income tax benefit of $95 million in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Income (Loss).

The impairment is reflected in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position as of August 2, 2019 as a reduction in Goodwill of $207 million, a reduction in Intangible assets, net of $266 million, a reduction in Property, plant, and equipment, net of $146 million, and a reduction in Other non-current liabilities of $95 million related to deferred income taxes. There were no remaining balances of Virtustream goodwill, intangible assets, or property, plant, and equipment as of August 2, 2019 following the impairment charge recognized during the three months ended August 2, 2019 due to the combined effect of that impairment charge and the Virtustream goodwill impairment charge recognized during the three months ended November 2, 2018.

In conjunction with the annual impairment test performed for the fiscal year ended February 1, 2019, it was determined that the excess of fair value over carrying amount was less than 20% for the RSA Security reporting unit, which had an excess of fair value over carrying amount of 11% as of November 2, 2018. Management continues to monitor the RSA Security goodwill reporting unit and consider potential impacts to the impairment assessment.

Following the closing of the Class V transaction described in Note 14 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements, the Company performed an interim impairment analysis during the three months ended February 1, 2019 given the availability of market data for the fair value of the Class C Common Stock. Other than the impairment indicators disclosed during the Company’s annual goodwill impairment test during the three months ended November 2, 2018, there were no impairment indicators resulting from the interim impairment analysis. No events or circumstances transpired subsequent to this interim impairment analysis test that would indicate a potential impairment of goodwill as of August 2, 2019, other than the impairment charge related to Virtustream as discussed above.

Management exercised significant judgment related to the above assessments, including the identification of goodwill reporting units, assignment of assets and liabilities to goodwill reporting units, assignment of goodwill to reporting units, and determination of the fair value of each goodwill reporting unit. The fair value of each goodwill reporting unit is generally estimated using a combination of public company multiples and discounted cash flow methodologies, unless the reporting unit relates to a publicly traded entity (VMware, Inc., Pivotal, or Secureworks), in which case the fair value is determined based primarily on the public company market valuation. The discounted cash flow and public company multiples methodologies require significant judgment, including estimation of future cash flows, which is dependent on internal forecasts, current and anticipated economic conditions and trends, selection of market multiples through assessment of the reporting unit’s performance relative to peer competitors, the estimation of the long-term growth rate of the Company’s business, and the determination of the Company’s weighted average cost of capital. Changes in these estimates and assumptions could materially affect the fair value of the goodwill reporting unit, potentially resulting in a non-cash impairment charge.

43

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**Intangible Assets**

The following table presents the Company’s intangible assets as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Gross** | | |  | **Accumulated Amortization** | | |  | **Net** | | |  | **Gross** | | |  | **Accumulated Amortization** | | |  | **Net** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Customer relationships | $ | 22,712 |  |  | $ | (12,828 | ) |  | $ | 9,884 |  |  | $ | 22,750 |  |  | $ | (11,703 | ) |  | $ | 11,047 |  |
| Developed technology | 15,450 | |  |  | (9,941 | | ) |  | 5,509 | |  |  | 15,701 | |  |  | (9,036 | | ) |  | 6,665 | |  |
| Trade names | 1,282 | |  |  | (711 | | ) |  | 571 | |  |  | 1,291 | |  |  | (606 | | ) |  | 685 | |  |
| Leasehold assets (liabilities) | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 128 | |  |  | (10 | | ) |  | 118 | |  |
| Definite-lived intangible assets | 39,444 | |  |  | (23,480 | | ) |  | 15,964 | |  |  | 39,870 | |  |  | (21,355 | | ) |  | 18,515 | |  |
| Indefinite-lived trade names | 3,755 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 3,755 | |  |  | 3,755 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 3,755 | |  |
| Total intangible assets | $ | 43,199 |  |  | $ | (23,480 | ) |  | $ | 19,719 |  |  | $ | 43,625 |  |  | $ | (21,355 | ) |  | $ | 22,270 |  |

Amortization expense related to definite-lived intangible assets was approximately $1.1 billion and $1.5 billion for the three months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018, respectively, and $2.3 billion and $3.0 billion for the six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018, respectively. During the three months ended August 2, 2019, an impairment charge related to Virtustream intangible assets, net was approximately $266 million, as discussed above. There were no material impairment charges related to intangible assets during the three months ended August 3, 2018. Due to the adoption of the new lease standard discussed in Note 1 and Note 2 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements, the Company derecognized all intangible leasehold assets and adjusted the carrying amount of the ROU assets by a corresponding amount as of February 2, 2019.

The following table presents the estimated future annual pre-tax amortization expense of definite-lived intangible assets as of the date indicated:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | |
|  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |
| **Fiscal Years** | (in millions) | | |
| 2020 (remaining six months) | $ | 2,095 |  |
| 2021 | 3,325 | |  |
| 2022 | 2,619 | |  |
| 2023 | 1,743 | |  |
| 2024 | 1,386 | |  |
| Thereafter | 4,796 | |  |
| Total | $ | 15,964 |  |

44

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 9 — DEFERRED REVENUE**

*Deferred Revenue*— Deferred revenue is recorded for support and deployment services, software maintenance, professional services, training, and SaaS when the Company has a right to invoice or payments have been received for undelivered products or services where transfer of control has not occurred. Revenue is recognized on these items when the revenue recognition criteria are met, generally resulting in ratable recognition over the contract term. The Company also has deferred revenue related to undelivered hardware and professional services, consisting of installations and consulting engagements, which are recognized as the Company’s performance obligations under the contract are completed.

The following table presents the changes in the Company’s deferred revenue for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Deferred revenue:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Deferred revenue at beginning of period | $ | 24,178 |  |  | $ | 20,959 |  |  | $ | 24,010 |  |  | $ | 20,816 |  |
| Revenue deferrals for new contracts and changes in estimates for pre-existing contracts (a) (b) | 5,975 | |  |  | 4,988 | |  |  | 10,875 | |  |  | 9,313 | |  |
| Revenue recognized (b) | (4,805 | | ) |  | (4,247 | | ) |  | (9,537 | | ) |  | (8,429 | | ) |
| Deferred revenue at end of period | $ | 25,348 |  |  | $ | 21,700 |  |  | $ | 25,348 |  |  | $ | 21,700 |  |
| Short-term deferred revenue | $ | 13,568 |  |  | $ | 11,965 |  |  | $ | 13,568 |  |  | $ | 11,965 |  |
| Long-term deferred revenue | $ | 11,780 |  |  | $ | 9,735 |  |  | $ | 11,780 |  |  | $ | 9,735 |  |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (a) | Includes the impact of foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (b) | The Company conformed the presentation of certain deferred revenue rollforward activity for the three and six months ended August 3, 2018 to align current year presentation. The beginning and ending deferred revenue liability balances remain unchanged. |

*Remaining Performance Obligations*— Remaining performance obligations represent the aggregate amount of the transaction price allocated to performance obligations not delivered, or partially undelivered, as of the end of the reporting period.

Remaining performance obligations include deferred revenue plus unbilled amounts not yet recorded in deferred revenue. The aggregate amount of the transaction price allocated to remaining performance obligations does not include amounts owed under cancelable contracts where there is no substantive termination penalty.

The Company applied the practical expedient to exclude the value of remaining performance obligations for contracts for which revenue is recognized at the amount to which the Company has the right to invoice for services performed. The Company also applied the practical expedient to not disclose the amount of transaction price allocated to remaining performance obligations for the periods prior to adoption of the new revenue standard.

Remaining performance obligation estimates are subject to change and are affected by several factors, including terminations, changes in the scope of contracts, periodic revalidation, adjustments for revenue that have not materialized, and adjustments for currency.

The value of the transaction price allocated to remaining performance obligations as of August 2, 2019 was approximately $33 billion. The Company expects to recognize approximately 61% of remaining performance obligations as revenue in the next twelve months, and the remainder thereafter.

45

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 10 — COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES**

**Legal Matters**

The Company is involved in various claims, suits, assessments, investigations, and legal proceedings that arise from time to time in the ordinary course of its business, including those identified below, consisting of matters involving consumer, antitrust, tax, intellectual property, and other issues on a global basis.

The Company accrues a liability when it believes that it is both probable that a liability has been incurred and that it can reasonably estimate the amount of the loss. The Company reviews these accruals at least quarterly and adjusts them to reflect ongoing negotiations, settlements, rulings, advice of legal counsel, and other relevant information. To the extent new information is obtained and the Company’s views on the probable outcomes of claims, suits, assessments, investigations, or legal proceedings change, changes in the Company’s accrued liabilities would be recorded in the period in which such a determination is made. For some matters, the amount of liability is not probable or the amount cannot be reasonably estimated and therefore accruals have not been made.

The following is a discussion of the Company’s significant legal matters and other proceedings:

*Securities Litigation* — On May 21, 2014, a securities class action seeking compensatory damages was filed in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, captioned City of Pontiac General Employees’ RetirementSystem v. Dell Inc., et. al. (Case No. 1:14-cv-03644).  The action names as defendants Dell Inc. (“Dell”)

and certain current and former executive officers, and alleges that Dell made false and misleading statements about Dell’s financial results and future prospects between February 21, 2012 and May 22, 2012, which resulted in artificially inflated stock prices. The case was transferred to the United States District Court for the Western District of Texas under the same caption (Case No. 1:15-cv-00374), where the defendants filed a motion to dismiss. On September 16, 2016, the Court denied the motion to dismiss. On March 29, 2018, the Court granted the plaintiffs’ motion for class certification, and certified a class consisting of all purchasers of Dell common stock between February 22, 2012 and May 22, 2012. Fact and expert discovery is now closed. Dell filed a motion for summary judgment on February 18, 2019, which is pending before the Court. The parties have been engaged in settlement discussions and have agreed to an immaterial settlement amount pending the Court’s preliminary approval in the next few months.

*Class Actions Related to the Class V Transaction* — Four purported stockholders brought putative class action complaints arising out of the Class V transaction described in Note 14 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements. The actions were captioned Hallandale Beach Police and Fire Retirement Plan v. Michael Dell et al. (Civil Action No. 2018-0816-JTL), Howard Karp v. Michael Dell et al. (Civil Action No. 2019-0032-JTL), Miramar Police Officers’ Retirement Plan v. Michael Dell et al. (Civil Action No. 2019-0049-JTL), and Steamfitters Local 449 Pension Plan v. Michael Dell et al. (Civil Action No. 2019-0115-JTL).  The four actions were consolidated into In Re Dell Class V Litigation (Consol. C.A. No. 2018-0816-JTL), which names as defendants the Company’s board of directors and certain stockholders of the Company, including Michael S. Dell.  The plaintiffs generally allege that the defendants breached their fiduciary duties to the former holders of Class V Common Stock in connection with the Class V transaction by allegedly causing the Company to enter into a transaction that favored the interests of the controlling stockholders at the expense of such former stockholders.  The plaintiffs filed an amended complaint on August 9, 2019 making substantially similar allegations as described above. The defendants intend to file a motion to dismiss the action, which will be due on September 30, 2019.

*Copyright Levies*— The Company is involved in various proceedings and negotiations regarding Dell’s obligation to collect and remit copyright levies in certain European Union (“EU”) countries.  The Company continues to collect levies in EU countries where it has determined that local laws require payment. The Company, along with other companies and/or industry associations, also continues to oppose levy schemes that do not comply with EU law. The Company does not currently anticipate that any of these matters will have a material adverse effect on its business, financial condition, results of operations, or cash flows.

46

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

*Other Litigation* — The various legal proceedings in which Dell is involved include commercial and intellectual property litigation. Dell does not currently anticipate that any of these matters will have a material adverse effect on its business, financial condition, results of operations, or cash flows.

As of August 2, 2019, the Company does not believe there is a reasonable possibility that a material loss exceeding the amounts already accrued for these or other proceedings or matters has been incurred. However, since the ultimate resolution of any such proceedings and matters is inherently unpredictable, the Company’s business, financial condition, results of operations, or cash flows could be materially affected in any particular period by unfavorable outcomes in one or more of these proceedings or matters. Whether the outcome of any claim, suit, assessment, investigation, or legal proceeding, individually or collectively, could have a material adverse effect on the Company’s business, financial condition, results of operations, or cash flows will depend on a number of variables, including the nature, timing, and amount of any associated expenses, amounts paid in settlement, damages, or other remedies or consequences.

**Indemnifications**

In the ordinary course of business, the Company enters into contractual arrangements under which it may agree to indemnify the third party to such arrangements from any losses incurred relating to the services it performs on behalf of the Company or for losses arising from certain events as defined in the particular contract, such as litigation or claims relating to past performance. Such indemnification obligations may not be subject to maximum loss clauses. Historically, payments related to these indemnifications have not been material to the Company.

47

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 11 — INCOME AND OTHER TAXES**

For the three months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018, the Company’s effective income tax rates were 3912.6% and 1.5%, respectively, on pre-tax losses of $111 million and $468 million, respectively. For the six months ended August 2, 2019 and August 3, 2018, the Company’s effective income tax rates were 1895.7% and 8.4%, respectively, on pre-tax losses of $254 million and $1.1 billion, respectively. The changes in the Company’s effective tax rates are primarily driven by discrete tax items and a change in the Company’s jurisdictional mix of income.  During the three months ended May 3, 2019, the Company completed an intra-entity asset transfer of certain of its intellectual property to an Irish subsidiary, resulting in a discrete tax benefit of $405 million. During the three months ended August 2, 2019, the Company’s VMware business unit completed a similar transaction, resulting in a discrete tax benefit of $4.5 billion. The tax benefit for each intra-entity asset transfer was recorded as a deferred tax asset in the period of transaction and represents the book and tax basis difference on the transferred assets measured based on the applicable Irish statutory tax rate. The tax deductions for amortization of the assets will be recognized in the future, and any amortization not deducted for tax purposes will be carried forward indefinitely under Irish Tax laws. The Company expects to be able to realize the deferred tax assets resulting from these intra-company asset transfers. For the three and six months ended August 2, 2019, the Company’s effective tax rates include $273 million discrete tax expense related to certain foreign tax credits associated with U.S. Tax Reform discussed below.  The Company’s effective tax rates for the three and six months ended August 2, 2019 also include $95 million of discrete tax benefits relating to Virtustream impairment charges discussed in Note 8 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements. For the six months ended August 3, 2018, the Company’s effective tax rate included $154 million of discrete tax benefits resulting from the impact of its adoption of the new revenue recognition standard during the three months ended May 4, 2018.

The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017 (“U.S. Tax Reform”) was signed into law on December 22, 2017.  Among other things, U.S. Tax Reform lowers the U.S. corporate income tax rate to 21% from 35%, establishes a modified territorial system requiring a mandatory deemed repatriation tax on undistributed earnings of foreign subsidiaries, requires a minimum tax on certain future earnings generated by foreign subsidiaries while providing for future tax-free repatriation of earnings through a 100% dividends-received deduction, and places limitations on the deductibility of net interest expense. The Company anticipates that the U.S. Department of the Treasury and the Internal Revenue Service (“IRS”) will continue to issue regulatory guidance clarifying certain provisions of U.S. Tax Reform.  When additional guidance is issued, the Company will recognize the related tax impact in the fiscal quarter of such issuance.

The differences between the estimated effective income tax rates and the U.S. federal statutory rate of 21% principally result from the Company’s geographical distribution of income and differences between the book and tax treatment of certain items. In certain jurisdictions, the Company’s tax rate is significantly less than the applicable statutory rate as a result of tax holidays. The majority of the Company’s foreign income that is subject to these tax holidays and lower tax rates is attributable to Singapore, China, and Malaysia. A significant portion of these income tax benefits relates to a tax holiday that will be effective until January 31, 2029.  The Company’s other tax holidays will expire in whole or in part during fiscal years 2022 through 2030. Many of these tax holidays and reduced tax rates may be extended when certain conditions are met or may be terminated early if certain conditions are not met. As of August 2, 2019, the Company was not aware of any matters of non-compliance related to these tax holidays.

The Company’s U.S. federal income tax returns for fiscal years 2007 through 2009 are currently under consideration by the Office of Appeals of the IRS. The IRS issued a Revenue Agent’s Report (“RAR”) related to those years during the fiscal year ended February 3, 2017.  The IRS has proposed adjustments primarily relating to transfer pricing matters with which the Company disagrees and has been contesting through the IRS administrative appeals process. Although this process has been progressing and the timing of any resolution remains uncertain, the Company anticipates reaching a settlement with the IRS before the end of Fiscal 2020. In May 2017, the IRS commenced a federal income tax audit for fiscal years 2010 through 2014, for which the Company expects to receive a RAR in early 2020.

The Company is also currently under income tax audits in various state and foreign jurisdictions.  The Company is undergoing negotiations, and in some cases contested proceedings, relating to tax matters with the taxing authorities in these jurisdictions.  The Company believes that it has provided adequate reserves related to all matters contained in tax periods open to examination.  Although the Company believes it has made adequate provisions for the uncertainties surrounding these audits, should the Company experience unfavorable outcomes, such outcomes could have a material impact on its results of operations, financial position, and cash flows.  With respect to major U.S. state and foreign taxing jurisdictions, the Company is generally not subject to tax examinations for years prior to the fiscal year ended February 2, 2007.

48

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

Judgment is required in evaluating the Company’s uncertain tax positions and determining the Company’s provision for income taxes. The unrecognized tax benefits were $3.5 billion and $3.4 billion as of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, respectively, and are included in accrued and other and other non-current liabilities in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position. Although timing of resolution or closure of audits is not certain, the Company believes it is reasonably possible that certain tax matters in various jurisdictions, including those matters discussed above, could be concluded within the next twelve months. The resolution of these audits could reduce the Company’s unrecognized tax benefits by an estimated amount of between $500 million to $800 million. Such a reduction will have a material effect on the Company’s effective tax rate.

The Company takes certain non-income tax positions in the jurisdictions in which it operates and has received certain non-income tax assessments from various jurisdictions. The Company believes that a material loss in these matters is not probable and that it is not reasonably possible that a material loss exceeding amounts already accrued has been incurred.  The Company believes its positions in these non-income tax litigation matters are supportable and that it ultimately will prevail in the matters. In the normal course of business, the Company’s positions and conclusions related to its non-income taxes could be challenged and assessments may be made. To the extent new information is obtained and the Company’s views on its positions, probable outcomes of assessments, or litigation change, changes in estimates to the Company’s accrued liabilities would be recorded in the period in which such a determination is made. In the resolution process for income tax and non-income tax audits, the Company is required in certain situations to provide collateral guarantees or indemnification to regulators and tax authorities until the matter is resolved.

49

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 12 — ACCUMULATED OTHER COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (LOSS)**

Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) is presented in stockholders’ equity (deficit) in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position and consists of amounts related to foreign currency translation adjustments, unrealized net gains (losses) on investments, unrealized net gains (losses) on cash flow hedges, and actuarial net gains (losses) from pension and other postretirement plans.

The following table presents changes in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax, by the following components as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Foreign Currency Translation Adjustments** | | |  | **Investments** | | |  | **Cash Flow Hedges** | | |  | **Pension and Other Postretirement Plans** | | |  | **Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Balances as of February 1, 2019* | $ | (452 | ) |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | (29 | ) |  | $ | 14 |  |  | $ | (467 | ) |
| Other comprehensive income (loss) before reclassifications | (236 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | 257 | |  |  | 8 | |  |  | 29 | |  |
| Amounts reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | (126 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (126 | | ) |
| Total change for the period | (236 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | 131 | |  |  | 8 | |  |  | (97 | | ) |
| Less: Change in comprehensive income attributable to non-controlling interests | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 1 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 1 | |  |
| *Balances as of August 2, 2019* | $ | (688 | ) |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 101 |  |  | $ | 22 |  |  | $ | (565 | ) |

Amounts related to investments are reclassified to net income (loss) when gains and losses are realized. See Note 3 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for more information on the Company’s investments. Amounts related to the Company’s cash flow hedges are reclassified to net income during the same period in which the items being hedged are recognized in earnings. See Note 7 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for more information on the Company’s derivative instruments.

50

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

The following table presents reclassifications out of accumulated other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax, to net income (loss) for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Investments** | | |  | **Cash Flow Hedges** | | |  | **Total** | | |  | **Investments** | | |  | **Cash Flow Hedges** | | |  | **Total** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Total reclassifications, net of tax:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Net revenue | $ | — |  |  | $ | 68 |  |  | $ | 68 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 77 |  |  | $ | 77 |  |
| Cost of net revenue | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |
| Interest and other, net | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |
| Total reclassifications, net of tax | $ | — |  |  | $ | 68 |  |  | $ | 68 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 77 |  |  | $ | 77 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
|  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | | | | | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **Investments** | | |  | **Cash Flow Hedges** | | |  | **Total** | | |  | **Investments** | | |  | **Cash Flow Hedges** | | |  | **Total** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Total reclassifications, net of tax:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Net revenue | $ | — |  |  | $ | 126 |  |  | $ | 126 |  |  | $ | — |  |  | $ | 46 |  |  | $ | 46 |  |
| Cost of net revenue | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |
| Interest and other, net | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  | 1 | |  |  | — | |  |  | 1 | |  |
| Total reclassifications, net of tax | $ | — |  |  | $ | 126 |  |  | $ | 126 |  |  | $ | 1 |  |  | $ | 46 |  |  | $ | 47 |  |

51

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 13** **— NON-CONTROLLING INTERESTS**

*VMware, Inc.* — The non-controlling interests’ share of equity in VMware, Inc. is reflected as a component of the non-controlling interests in the accompanying Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position and was $4.4 billion and $3.8 billion as of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, respectively. As of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, the Company held approximately 80.8% and 80.5%, respectively, of the outstanding equity interest in VMware, Inc.

*Pivotal* — The non-controlling interests’ share of equity in Pivotal is reflected as a component of the non-controlling interest in the accompanying Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position and was $1.0 billion as of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019. As of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, the Company held approximately 60.9% and 62.8%, respectively, of the outstanding equity interest in Pivotal.

*Secureworks* — The non-controlling interests’ share of equity in Secureworks is reflected as a component of the non-controlling interests in the accompanying Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position and was $87 million as of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019. As of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, the Company held approximately 87.0% and 87.4%, respectively, of the outstanding equity interest in Secureworks, excluding restricted stock awards (“RSAs”). As of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, the Company held approximately 86.2% and 86.4%, respectively, of the outstanding equity interest in Secureworks, including RSAs.

The following table presents the effect of changes in the Company’s ownership interest in VMware, Inc., Pivotal, and Secureworks on the Company’s equity for the period indicated:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | |
|  |  |  |  |
|  | **Six Months Ended** | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | |
| Net income attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. | $ | 3,709 |  |
| Transfers (to)/from the non-controlling interests: |  | | |
| Increase in Dell Technologies Inc. additional paid-in-capital for equity issuances and other equity activity | 379 | |  |
| Decrease in Dell Technologies Inc. additional paid-in-capital and accumulated deficit for equity issuances and other equity activity | (1,036 | | ) |
| Net transfers to non-controlling interests | (657 | | ) |
| Change from net income attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. and transfers to the non-controlling interests | $ | 3,052 |  |

52

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 14** **— CAPITALIZATION**

The following table presents the Company’s authorized, issued, and outstanding common stock as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Authorized** | |  | **Issued** | |  | **Outstanding** | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | |
| *Common stock as of August 2, 2019* | | | | | | | | |
| Class A | 600 |  |  | 374 |  |  | 374 |  |
| Class B | 200 |  |  | 119 |  |  | 119 |  |
| Class C | 7,900 |  |  | 233 |  |  | 231 |  |
| Class D | 100 |  |  | — |  |  | — |  |
| Class V | 343 |  |  | — |  |  | — |  |
|  | 9,143 |  |  | 726 |  |  | 724 |  |
|  |  | |  |  | |  |  | |
| *Common stock as of February 1, 2019* | | | | | | | | |
| Class A | 600 |  |  | 410 |  |  | 410 |  |
| Class B | 200 |  |  | 137 |  |  | 137 |  |
| Class C | 7,900 |  |  | 174 |  |  | 172 |  |
| Class D | 100 |  |  | — |  |  | — |  |
| Class V | 343 |  |  | — |  |  | — |  |
|  | 9,143 |  |  | 721 |  |  | 719 |  |

Under the Company’s certificate of incorporation as amended and restated upon the completion of the Class V transaction described below, the Company is prohibited from issuing any of the authorized shares of Class V Common Stock.

**Preferred Stock**

The Company is authorized to issue one million shares of preferred stock, par value $0.01 per share. As of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, no shares of preferred stock were issued or outstanding.

**Common Stock**

*Common Stock for Fiscal 2020 and Thereafter*

*Dell Technologies Common Stock*— For fiscal periods beginning with the first quarter of Fiscal 2020, the Class A Common Stock, the Class B Common Stock, the Class C Common Stock, and the Class D Common Stock, formerly collectively referred to as the DHI Group Common Stock, are collectively referred to as Dell Technologies Common Stock. The redesignation of such classes of common stock from DHI Group Common Stock to Dell Technologies Common Stock is intended to align the Company’s reporting with how such classes are referred to by securities analysts, investors, and other users of the financial statements since the completion on December 28, 2018 of the Class V transaction described below. As a result of the cancellation of all outstanding Class V Common Stock upon the closing of that transaction, there is no requirement after the fourth quarter of Fiscal 2019 to allocate net income (loss) between two separate groups of common stock denoted the DHI Group Common Stock and the Class V Common Stock or to report earnings (loss) per share for each such group. Accordingly, net income (loss), earnings (loss) per share and other relevant information will be reported for Dell Technologies Common Stock for all fiscal periods beginning with the first quarter of Fiscal 2020 and, because of lack of comparability with the new reporting, will be reported separately for the DHI Group and the Class V Common Stock, as applicable, for prior fiscal periods. The par value for all classes of Dell Technologies Common Stock is $0.01 per share. The Class A Common Stock, the Class B Common Stock, the Class C Common Stock, and the Class D Common Stock share equally in dividends declared or accumulated and have equal participation rights in undistributed earnings.

53

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

*Common Stock prior to Fiscal 2020*

*DHI Group Common Stock* *and DHI Group*— For the fiscal periods prior to the first quarter of Fiscal 2020, the Class A Common Stock, the Class B Common Stock, the Class C Common Stock, and the Class D Common Stock were collectively referred to as the DHI Group Common Stock. All classes of DHI Group Common Stock have a par value of $0.01 per share and the Class A Common Stock, the Class B Common Stock, the Class C Common Stock, and the Class D Common Stock share equally in dividends declared or accumulated and have equal participation rights in undistributed earnings. Prior to the completion on December 28, 2018 of the Class V transaction, the DHI Group referred to the direct and indirect interest of Dell Technologies in all of Dell Technologies’ business, assets, properties, liabilities, and preferred stock other than those attributable to the Class V Group, as well as the DHI Group’s retained interest in the Class V Group. Subsequent to the completion of the Class V transaction, the DHI Group refers to all classes of issued and outstanding DHI Group Common Stock.

*Class V Common Stock and Class V Group* — The Class V Common Stock was a class of common stock intended to track the performance of a portion of Dell Technologies’ economic interest in the Class V Group. The Class V Group consisted solely of VMware, Inc. common stock held by the Company. As of August 2, 2019, no shares of Class V Common Stock were outstanding.

*Voting Rights* — Each holder of record of (a) Class A Common Stock is entitled to ten votes per share of Class A Common Stock; (b) Class B Common Stock is entitled to ten votes per share of Class B Common Stock; (c) Class C Common Stock is entitled to one vote per share of Class C Common Stock; and (d) Class D Common Stock is not entitled to any vote on any matter except to the extent required by provisions of Delaware law (in which case such holder is entitled to one vote per share of Class D Common Stock).

*Conversion Rights* — Under the Company’s certificate of incorporation, at any time and from time to time, any holder of Class A Common Stock or Class B Common Stock has the right to convert all or any of the shares of Class A Common Stock or Class B Common Stock, as applicable, held by such holder into shares of Class C Common Stock on a one-to-one basis.  During the six months ended August 2, 2019, the Company issued 35,673,230 shares of Class C Common Stock to stockholders upon their conversion of the same number of shares of Class A Common Stock into Class C Common Stock in accordance with the Company’s certificate of incorporation. During the six months ended August 2, 2019, the Company issued 17,650,820 shares of Class C Common Stock to stockholders upon their conversion of the same number of shares of Class B Common Stock into Class C Common Stock in accordance with the Company’s certificate of incorporation.

**Class V Transaction**

On December 28, 2018, the Company completed a transaction (the “Class V transaction”) in which it paid $14.0 billion in cash and issued 149,387,617 shares of its Class C Common Stock to holders of the Class V Common Stock in exchange for all outstanding shares of Class V Common Stock. The non-cash consideration portion of the Class V transaction totaled $6.9 billion. As a result of the Class V transaction, the tracking stock feature of the Company’s capital structure associated with the Class V Common Stock was terminated. The Class C Common Stock is traded on the New York Stock Exchange.

The aggregate cash consideration and the fees and expenses incurred in connection with the Class V transaction were funded with proceeds of $3.67 billion from new term loans under the Company’s senior secured credit facilities, proceeds of a margin loan financing in an aggregate principal amount of $1.35 billion, proceeds of the Company’s pro-rata portion, in the amount of $8.87 billion, of a special $11 billion cash dividend paid by VMware, Inc. in connection with the Class V transaction, and cash on hand at Dell Technologies and its subsidiaries. See Note 6 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for information about the debt incurred by the Company to finance the Class V transaction.

54

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

The merger pursuant to which the Class V transaction was effected and the Class V transaction have been accounted for as a hybrid liability and equity transaction involving the repurchase of outstanding common stock, with the consideration consisting of a variable combination of cash and shares. Upon settlement, the accounting for the Class V transaction reflected that the outstanding Class V Common Stock was canceled and exchanged for shares of Class C Common Stock or $120.00 per share in cash or combination of cash and shares, depending on each holder’s election and subject to proration of the cash elections. The variable nature of the cash obligation to repurchase the shares of Class V Common Stock required the Company to settle a portion of the shares in exchange for cash and therefore was accounted for as a financial instrument with an immaterial mark-to-market adjustment for the change in fair value from the date of the stockholder meeting at which the Company’s stockholders voted to approve the Class V transaction to the election deadline by which holders of Class V Common Stock elected the form of consideration for which they exchanged their shares.

**Repurchases of Common Stock**

*VMware, Inc. Class A Common Stock Repurchases by VMware, Inc.*

On May 29, 2019, VMware, Inc.’s board of directors authorized the repurchase of an additional $1.5 billion of VMware, Inc.’s Class A common stock. Since the date of the EMC merger transaction, VMware, Inc.’s board of directors has authorized total repurchases of $3.7 billion, of which $1.3 billion remained available as of August 2, 2019. During the six months ended August 2, 2019, VMware, Inc. repurchased 5.7 million shares of its Class A common stock in the open market for approximately $1.0 billion, of which approximately $0.1 billion impacted Dell Technologies’ accumulated deficit balance as of August 2, 2019 as a result of the full depletion of VMware, Inc.’s additional paid-in capital balance in the current period. During the six months ended August 3, 2018, VMware, Inc. did not repurchase any shares of its Class A common stock.

All shares repurchased under VMware, Inc.’s stock repurchase programs are retired.

55

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 15 — EARNINGS (LOSS) PER SHARE**

Basic earnings (loss) per share is based on the weighted-average effect of all common shares issued and outstanding and is calculated by dividing net income (loss) by the weighted-average shares outstanding during the period. Diluted earnings (loss) per share is calculated by dividing net income (loss) by the weighted-average number of common shares used in the basic earnings (loss) per share calculation plus the number of common shares that would be issued assuming exercise or conversion of all potentially dilutive instruments. The Company excludes equity instruments from the calculation of diluted earnings (loss) per share if the effect of including such instruments is antidilutive.

Until the completion on December 28, 2018 of the Class V transaction described in Note 14 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements, the Company had two groups of common stock, denoted as the DHI Group Common Stock and the Class V Common Stock.

The Class V Common Stock was a class of common stock intended to track the economic performance of 61% of the Company’s interest in the Class V Group, which consisted solely of VMware, Inc. common stock held by the Company. Upon the completion of the Class V transaction, all outstanding shares of Class V Common Stock ceased to be outstanding, and the tracking stock structure was terminated. The Class C Common Stock issued to former holders of the Class V Common Stock in the Class V transaction represents an interest in the Company’s entire business and, unlike the Class V Common Stock, is not intended to track the performance of any distinct assets or business.

Prior to Fiscal 2020, the DHI Group Common Stock consists of the Class A Common Stock, the Class B Common Stock, the Class C Common Stock, and the Class D Common Stock. The DHI Group referred to the direct and indirect interest of Dell Technologies in all of Dell Technologies’ business, assets, properties, liabilities, and preferred stock other than those attributable to the Class V Group, as well as the DHI Group’s retained interest in the Class V Group.

For fiscal periods beginning with the first quarter of Fiscal 2020, the Class A Common Stock, the Class B Common Stock, the Class C Common Stock, and the Class D Common Stock, formerly collectively referred to as the DHI Group Common Stock, are collectively referred to as Dell Technologies Common Stock. The redesignation of such classes of common stock from DHI Group Common Stock to Dell Technologies Common Stock is intended to align the Company’s reporting with how such classes are referred to by securities analysts, investors, and other users of the financial statements since the completion of the Class V transaction. As a result of the cancellation of all outstanding Class V Common Stock upon the closing of that transaction, there is no requirement after the fourth quarter of Fiscal 2019 to allocate net income (loss) between two separate groups of common stock denoted DHI Group Common Stock and the Class V Common Stock or to report earnings (loss) per share measures for each such group. Accordingly, net income (loss), earnings (loss) per share and other relevant information will be reported for Dell Technologies Common Stock for all fiscal periods beginning with the first quarter of Fiscal 2020 and, because of the lack of comparability with the new reporting, will be reported separately for the DHI Group and the Class V Common Stock, as applicable, for prior fiscal periods.

For purposes of calculating earnings (loss) per share, the Company uses the two-class method. As all classes of Dell Technologies Common Stock and DHI Group Common Stock share the same rights in dividends, basic and diluted earnings (loss) per share are the same for each class of both Dell Technologies Common Stock and DHI Group Common Stock.

56

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

The following table presents the basic and diluted earnings (loss) per share for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
| *Earnings (loss) per share attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. - basic:* | | | | | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Dell Technologies Common Stock | $ | 4.75 |  |  |  | | |  | $ | 5.17 |  |  |  | | |
| Class V Common Stock |  | | |  | $ | 1.61 |  |  |  | | |  | $ | 3.97 |  |
| DHI Group |  | | |  | $ | (1.44 | ) |  |  | | |  | $ | (3.39 | ) |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| *Earnings (loss) per share attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. - diluted:* | | | | | | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Dell Technologies Common Stock | $ | 4.47 |  |  |  | | |  | $ | 4.84 |  |  |  | | |
| Class V Common Stock |  | | |  | $ | 1.58 |  |  |  | | |  | $ | 3.91 |  |
| DHI Group |  | | |  | $ | (1.45 | ) |  |  | | |  | $ | (3.40 | ) |

The following table presents the computation of basic and diluted earnings (loss) per share for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| *Numerator: Dell Technologies Common Stock* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Net income attributable to Dell Technologies - basic | $ | 3,416 |  |  | $ | 3,709 |  |
| Incremental dilution from VMware, Inc. attributable to Dell Technologies (a) | (62 | | ) |  | (78 | | ) |
| Net income attributable to Dell Technologies - diluted | $ | 3,354 |  |  | $ | 3,631 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |
| *Denominator: Dell Technologies Common Stock weighted-average shares outstanding* | | | | |  | | |
| Weighted-average shares outstanding - basic | 719 | |  |  | 718 | |  |
| Dilutive effect of options, restricted stock units, restricted stock, and other | 32 | |  |  | 32 | |  |
| Weighted-average shares outstanding - diluted | 751 | |  |  | 750 | |  |
| Weighted-average shares outstanding - antidilutive | 1 | |  |  | 1 | |  |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (a) | The incremental dilution from VMware, Inc. represents the impact of VMware, Inc.’s dilutive securities on diluted earnings (loss) per share of Dell Technologies Common Stock, and is calculated by multiplying the difference between VMware, Inc.’s basic and diluted earnings (loss) per share by the number of shares of VMware, Inc. common stock held by the Company. |

57

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

The following table presents the computation of basic and diluted earnings (loss) per share prior to Fiscal 2020 for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | |
|  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| *Numerator: Class V Common Stock* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Net income attributable to Class V Common Stock - basic | $ | 320 |  |  | $ | 790 |  |
| Incremental dilution from VMware, Inc. attributable to Class V Common Stock (a) | (5 | | ) |  | (12 | | ) |
| Net income attributable to Class V Common Stock - diluted | $ | 315 |  |  | $ | 778 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |
| *Numerator: DHI Group* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Net loss attributable to DHI Group - basic | $ | (819 | ) |  | $ | (1,925 | ) |
| Incremental dilution from VMware, Inc. attributable to DHI Group (a) | (4 | | ) |  | (8 | | ) |
| Net loss attributable to DHI Group - diluted | $ | (823 | ) |  | $ | (1,933 | ) |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |
| *Denominator: Class V Common Stock weighted-average shares outstanding* |  | |  |  |  | |  |
| Weighted-average shares outstanding - basic | 199 | |  |  | 199 | |  |
| Dilutive effect of options, restricted stock units, restricted stock, and other (b) | — | |  |  | — | |  |
| Weighted-average shares outstanding - diluted | 199 | |  |  | 199 | |  |
| Weighted-average shares outstanding - antidilutive (b) | — | |  |  | — | |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |
| *Denominator: DHI Group weighted-average shares outstanding* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Weighted-average shares outstanding - basic | 567 | |  |  | 568 | |  |
| Dilutive effect of options, restricted stock units, restricted stock, and other | — | |  |  | — | |  |
| Weighted-average shares outstanding - diluted | 567 | |  |  | 568 | |  |
| Weighted-average shares outstanding - antidilutive (c) | 47 | |  |  | 48 | |  |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (a) | The incremental dilution from VMware, Inc. represents the impact of VMware, Inc.’s dilutive securities on the diluted earnings (loss) per share of the DHI Group and the Class V Common Stock, respectively, and is calculated by multiplying the difference between VMware, Inc.’s basic and diluted earnings (loss) per share by the number of shares of VMware, Inc. common stock held by the Company. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (b) | The dilutive effect of Class V Common Stock-based incentive awards was not material to the calculation of the weighted-average Class V Common Stock shares outstanding. The antidilutive effect of these awards was also not material. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (c) | Stock-based incentive awards have been excluded from the calculation of the DHI Group’s diluted loss per share because their effect would have been antidilutive, as the Company had a net loss as to the DHI Group for the periods presented. |

58

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

The following table presents a reconciliation to the consolidated net loss attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. prior to Fiscal 2020 for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | |
|  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| Net income attributable to Class V Common Stock (a) | $ | 320 |  |  | $ | 790 |  |
| Net loss attributable to DHI Group | (819 | | ) |  | (1,925 | | ) |
| Net loss attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. | $ | (499 | ) |  | $ | (1,135 | ) |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (a) | See Exhibit 99.1 filed with the Company’s Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarterly period ended August 3, 2018 for a reconciliation of VMware net income to net income attributable to Class V Common Stock. |

59

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 16** **— STOCK-BASED COMPENSATION**

*Dell Technologies Inc. 2013 Stock Incentive Plan (As Amended and Restated as of July, 9, 2019)***—** During the three months ended August 2, 2019, the Company’s stockholders approved an amendment to the Dell Technologies Inc. 2013 Stock Incentive Plan (the “Plan”) to authorize an additional 35 million shares of Class C Common Stock for issuance pursuant to the Plan. Upon effectiveness of the amendment, a total of 110.5 million shares of Class C Common Stock are authorized for issuance. As of August 2, 2019, there were 54 million shares of Class C Common Stock available for future grants under the Plan.

*Restricted Stock Units*— During the six months ended August 2, 2019, the Company granted long-term incentive awards in the form of 10.0 million service-based restricted stock units (“RSUs”) and 1.9 million performance-based RSUs in order to align critical talent retention programs with the interests of holders of the Class C Common Stock.

The service-based RSUs have a fair value based on the closing price of the Class C Common Stock price as reported on the New York Stock Exchange (“NYSE”) on the grant date. Most of such RSUs vest ratably over a three-year period.  Each service-based RSU represents the right to acquire one share of Class C Common Stock upon vesting.

The performance-based RSUs are reflected at target units while the actual number of units that ultimately vest will range from 0% to 200% of target, based on the level of achievement of the performance goals and continued employment with the Company over a performance period ending March 14, 2022.  Approximately 0.9 million of the performance-based RSUs are subject to achievement of market-based performance goals based on relative total shareholder return.  For the non-market performance-based RSUs, the fair values will be based on the closing price of the Class C Common Stock as reported on the NYSE on the accounting grant date. For the six months ended August 2, 2019, approximately one-third of the non-market performance awards have been valued and are considered outstanding for accounting purposes. Market-based performance awards utilized a Monte Carlo valuation model to simulate the probabilities of achievement of relative total shareholder return in order to determine the awards’ fair value.

The following table presents the assumptions utilized in the valuation model for the period indicated:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | |
|  |  |  |  |
|  | **Six Months Ended** | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |
| Weighted-average grant date fair value | $ | 87.17 |  |
| Expected term (in years) | 3.0 | |  |
| Risk-free rate (U.S. Government Treasury Note) | 2.4 | | % |
| Expected volatility | 45 | | % |
| Expected dividend yield | — | | % |

As of August 2, 2019, 15 million RSUs were outstanding, of which 5 million RSUs were subject to performance conditions. The awards outstanding have a weighted-average grant date fair value of $49.80 per share and an aggregate intrinsic value of $812 million based on the closing price of the Class C Common Stock as reported on the NYSE on August 2, 2019. As of August 2, 2019, there was $512 million of unrecognized stock-based compensation expense, net of estimated forfeitures, related to these awards expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of approximately 2.6 years.

*Stock Options*- Of the 42 million stock options outstanding as of February 1, 2019, 5 million were exercised under the Plan during the six months ended August 2, 2019 with a weighted-average exercise price of $16.74. Cash proceeds were $88 million and the pre-tax intrinsic value of the options exercised was $189 million during the six months ended August 2, 2019.

60

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 17** **— REDEEMABLE SHARES**

Awards under the Company’s stock incentive plans include certain rights that allow the holder to exercise a put feature for the underlying Class A or Class C Common Stock after a six month holding period following the issuance of such common stock. The put feature requires the Company to purchase the stock at its fair market value. Accordingly, these awards and such common stock are subject to reclassification from equity to temporary equity, and the Company determines the award amounts to be classified as temporary equity as follows:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | For stock options to purchase Class C Common Stock subject to service requirements, the intrinsic value of the option is multiplied by the portion of the option for which services have been rendered. Upon exercise of the option, the amount in temporary equity represents the fair value of the Class C Common Stock. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | For stock appreciation rights, RSUs, or RSAs, any of which stock award types are subject to service requirements, the fair value of the share is multiplied by the portion of the share for which services have been rendered. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | For share-based arrangements that are subject to the occurrence of a contingent event, those amounts are not reclassified to temporary equity until the contingency has been satisfied. Contingent events include the achievement of performance-based metrics. |

In connection with the Class V transaction described in Note 14 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements, the put feature provisions were amended to provide that the put feature applicable to transfers of Dell Technologies securities will terminate upon the earlier of two years after the expiration on June 27, 2019 of the post-transaction lock-up or consummation of any underwritten public offering of shares of Class C Common Stock.

The following table presents the amount of redeemable shares classified as temporary equity and summarizes the award type as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| Redeemable shares classified as temporary equity | $ | 1,024 |  |  | $ | 1,196 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Issued and outstanding unrestricted common shares | 2 | |  |  | 3 | |  |
| Restricted stock units | 1 | |  |  | 1 | |  |
| Restricted stock awards | — | |  |  | — | |  |
| Outstanding stock options | 23 | |  |  | 31 | |  |

The decrease in the value of redeemable shares during the six months ended August 2, 2019 was primarily attributable to a decrease in Class C Common Stock fair value, reassessment of vesting probability for performance-based awards and a reduction in the number of shares eligible for put rights as market sales of shares occur.

61

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 18 — SEGMENT INFORMATION**

The Company has three reportable segments that are based on the following business units: Infrastructure Solutions Group (“ISG”); Client Solutions Group (“CSG”); and VMware.

ISG enables the digital transformation of the Company’s customers through its trusted multi-cloud and big data solutions, which are built upon a modern data center infrastructure. The ISG comprehensive portfolio of advanced storage solutions includes traditional storage solutions as well as next-generation storage solutions (such as all-flash arrays, scale-out file, object platforms, and software-defined solutions), while the Company’s server portfolio includes high-performance rack, blade, tower, and hyperscale servers. The ISG networking portfolio helps business customers transform and modernize their infrastructure, mobilize and enrich end-user experiences, and accelerate business applications and processes. ISG also offers attached software, peripherals, and services, including support and deployment, configuration, and extended warranty services.

CSG includes sales to commercial and consumer customers of branded hardware (such as desktops, workstations, and notebooks) and branded peripherals (such as displays and projectors), as well as services and third-party software and peripherals. CSG also offers attached software, peripherals, and services, including support and deployment, configuration, and extended warranty services.

VMware works with customers in the areas of hybrid cloud, multi-cloud, modern applications, networking and security, and digital workspaces, helping customers manage their IT resources across private clouds and complex multi-cloud, multi-device environments. VMware solutions provide a flexible digital foundation to enable the digital transformation of VMware’s customers as they ready their applications, infrastructure, and devices for their future business needs.

The reportable segments disclosed herein are based on information reviewed by the Company’s management to evaluate the business segment results. The Company’s measure of segment operating income for management reporting purposes excludes the impact of Other businesses, purchase accounting, amortization of intangible assets, unallocated corporate transactions, other corporate expenses, stock-based compensation expense, and transaction-related expenses. The Company does not allocate assets to the above reportable segments for internal reporting purposes.

62

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

The following table presents a reconciliation of net revenue by the Company’s reportable segments to the Company’s consolidated net revenue as well as a reconciliation of consolidated segment operating income to the Company’s consolidated operating income (loss) for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Consolidated net revenue:* |  | |  |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |
| Infrastructure Solutions Group | $ | 8,621 |  |  | $ | 9,227 |  |  | $ | 16,823 |  |  | $ | 17,894 |  |
| Client Solutions Group | 11,748 | |  |  | 11,128 | |  |  | 22,658 | |  |  | 21,399 | |  |
| VMware | 2,466 | |  |  | 2,194 | |  |  | 4,748 | |  |  | 4,222 | |  |
| Reportable segment net revenue | 22,835 | |  |  | 22,549 | |  |  | 44,229 | |  |  | 43,515 | |  |
| Other businesses (a) | 619 | |  |  | 574 | |  |  | 1,215 | |  |  | 1,153 | |  |
| Unallocated transactions (b) | — | |  |  | (1 | | ) |  | — | |  |  | (3 | | ) |
| Impact of purchase accounting (c) | (84 | | ) |  | (180 | | ) |  | (166 | | ) |  | (367 | | ) |
| Total consolidated net revenue | $ | 23,370 |  |  | $ | 22,942 |  |  | $ | 45,278 |  |  | $ | 44,298 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| *Consolidated operating income (loss):* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Infrastructure Solutions Group | $ | 1,050 |  |  | $ | 1,012 |  |  | $ | 1,893 |  |  | $ | 1,951 |  |
| Client Solutions Group | 982 | |  |  | 425 | |  |  | 1,775 | |  |  | 958 | |  |
| VMware | 762 | |  |  | 736 | |  |  | 1,376 | |  |  | 1,349 | |  |
| Reportable segment operating income | 2,794 | |  |  | 2,173 | |  |  | 5,044 | |  |  | 4,258 | |  |
| Other businesses (a) | (25 | | ) |  | (49 | | ) |  | (78 | | ) |  | (99 | | ) |
| Unallocated transactions (b) | (26 | | ) |  | (16 | | ) |  | (27 | | ) |  | (25 | | ) |
| Impact of purchase accounting (c) | (102 | | ) |  | (215 | | ) |  | (203 | | ) |  | (437 | | ) |
| Amortization of intangibles | (1,060 | | ) |  | (1,526 | | ) |  | (2,277 | | ) |  | (3,048 | | ) |
| Transaction-related expenses (d) | (47 | | ) |  | (104 | | ) |  | (89 | | ) |  | (270 | | ) |
| Stock-based compensation expense (e) | (301 | | ) |  | (216 | | ) |  | (564 | | ) |  | (415 | | ) |
| Other corporate expenses (f) | (714 | | ) |  | (60 | | ) |  | (737 | | ) |  | (130 | | ) |
| Total consolidated operating income (loss) | $ | 519 |  |  | $ | (13 | ) |  | $ | 1,069 |  |  | $ | (166 | ) |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (a) | Pivotal, Secureworks, RSA Security, Virtustream, and Boomi constitute “Other businesses” and do not meet the requirements for a reportable segment, either individually or collectively. The results of Other businesses are not material to the Company’s overall results. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (b) | Unallocated transactions includes other corporate items that are not allocated to Dell Technologies’ reportable segments. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (c) | Impact of purchase accounting includes non-cash purchase accounting adjustments that are primarily related to the EMC merger transaction. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (d) | Transaction-related expenses includes acquisition, integration, and divestiture related costs, as well as the costs incurred in the Class V transaction. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (e) | Stock-based compensation expense consists of equity awards granted based on the estimated fair value of those awards at grant date. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (f) | Other corporate expenses includes impairment charges and severance, facility action, and other costs. See Note 8 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information on Virtustream impairment charges. |

63

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

The following table presents the disaggregation of net revenue by reportable segment, and by major product categories within the segments for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Net revenue:* |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | | |
| *Infrastructure Solutions Group:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Servers and networking | $ | 4,437 |  |  | $ | 5,061 |  |  | $ | 8,617 |  |  | $ | 9,646 |  |
| Storage | 4,184 | |  |  | 4,166 | |  |  | 8,206 | |  |  | 8,248 | |  |
| Total ISG net revenue | 8,621 | |  |  | 9,227 | |  |  | 16,823 | |  |  | 17,894 | |  |
| *Client Solutions Group:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Commercial | 9,077 | |  |  | 8,109 | |  |  | 17,384 | |  |  | 15,472 | |  |
| Consumer | 2,671 | |  |  | 3,019 | |  |  | 5,274 | |  |  | 5,927 | |  |
| Total CSG net revenue | 11,748 | |  |  | 11,128 | |  |  | 22,658 | |  |  | 21,399 | |  |
| *VMware:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Total VMware net revenue | 2,466 | |  |  | 2,194 | |  |  | 4,748 | |  |  | 4,222 | |  |
| Total segment net revenue | $ | 22,835 |  |  | $ | 22,549 |  |  | $ | 44,229 |  |  | $ | 43,515 |  |

64

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 19 — SUPPLEMENTAL CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

The following table presents additional information on selected accounts included in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Financial Position as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| *Cash, cash equivalents, and restricted cash:* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents | $ | 9,193 |  |  | $ | 9,676 |  |
| Restricted cash - other current assets (a) | 616 | |  |  | 522 | |  |
| Restricted cash - other non-current assets (a) | 126 | |  |  | 42 | |  |
| Total cash, cash equivalents, and restricted cash | $ | 9,935 |  |  | $ | 10,240 |  |
| *Inventories, net:* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Production materials | $ | 1,441 |  |  | $ | 1,794 |  |
| Work-in-process | 623 | |  |  | 702 | |  |
| Finished goods | 1,071 | |  |  | 1,153 | |  |
| Total inventories, net | $ | 3,135 |  |  | $ | 3,649 |  |
| *Other non-current liabilities:* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Warranty liability | $ | 170 |  |  | $ | 169 |  |
| Deferred and other tax liabilities | 4,605 | |  |  | 5,527 | |  |
| Non-current operating lease liabilities | 1,234 | |  |  | — | |  |
| Other | 619 | |  |  | 631 | |  |
| Total other non-current liabilities | $ | 6,628 |  |  | $ | 6,327 |  |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (a) | Restricted cash primarily includes cash required to be held in escrow pursuant to DFS securitization arrangements and VMware, Inc. restricted cash. |

**Warranty Liability**

The following table presents changes in the Company’s liability for standard limited warranties for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Warranty liability:* |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | | |
| Warranty liability at beginning of period | $ | 500 |  |  | $ | 527 |  |  | $ | 524 |  |  | $ | 539 |  |
| Costs accrued for new warranty contracts and changes in estimates for pre-existing warranties (a) (b) | 237 | |  |  | 236 | |  |  | 440 | |  |  | 430 | |  |
| Service obligations honored | (212 | | ) |  | (221 | | ) |  | (439 | | ) |  | (427 | | ) |
| Warranty liability at end of period | $ | 525 |  |  | $ | 542 |  |  | $ | 525 |  |  | $ | 542 |  |
| Current portion | $ | 355 |  |  | $ | 366 |  |  | $ | 355 |  |  | $ | 366 |  |
| Non-current portion | $ | 170 |  |  | $ | 176 |  |  | $ | 170 |  |  | $ | 176 |  |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (a) | Changes in cost estimates related to pre-existing warranties are aggregated with accruals for new standard warranty contracts. The Company’s warranty liability process does not differentiate between estimates made for pre-existing warranties and new warranty obligations. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (b) | Includes the impact of foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations. |

65

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC.**

**NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**(unaudited)**

**NOTE 20 — SUBSEQUENT EVENTS**

*VMware, Inc. Acquisition Agreements*

*Carbon Black* **—**VMware, Inc. entered into a definitive agreement to acquire Carbon Black, Inc. through a cash tender offer of $26.00 per share, resulting in an expected net cash payment of $1.9 billion by VMware, Inc.  Carbon Black, Inc. develops cloud-native endpoint security software. The acquisition has been approved by the boards of directors of both VMware, Inc. and Carbon Black, Inc. and is expected to close during the second half of Fiscal 2020, subject to completion of the tender offer, regulatory approvals and other customary closing conditions.

*Pivotal* **—** VMware, Inc. entered into a definitive merger agreement (the “Merger Agreement”) to acquire Pivotal at a blended price per share of $11.71 per share, consisting of $15.00 per share in cash to the holders of Pivotal’s Class A common stock, and the exchange of VMware, Inc.’s Class B common stock for Pivotal’s Class B common stock held by Dell Technologies, at an exchange ratio of 0.0550 VMware, Inc. shares for each Pivotal share. In aggregate, this transaction will result in an expected net cash payment of $0.8 billion by VMware, Inc. and the issuance of approximately 7.2 million shares of VMware, Inc.’s Class B common stock to Dell Technologies. The VMware, Inc. Class B common stock issued to Dell Technologies would increase its ownership stake in VMware, Inc. by approximately 0.3 percentage points to 81.1% based on the shares outstanding as of the announcement of the Merger Agreement. The acquisition has been approved by the boards of directors of both VMware, Inc. and Pivotal and is expected to close during the second half of Fiscal 2020, subject to approval of the Merger Agreement by Pivotal stockholders, regulatory approvals and other customary closing conditions. The purchase of Pivotal will be accounted for as a transaction by entities under common control. Assets and liabilities transferred will be recorded at their historical carrying amounts on the date of the transfer, with no goodwill being recognized.

*Support Agreement* **—**In connection with VMware, Inc.’s entry into the Merger Agreement to acquire Pivotal as described above, Dell Technologies entered into a Consent and Support Agreement (the “Support Agreement”) with EMC Equity Assets LLC (“EMC Equity,” and together with Dell Technologies, the “Dell Stockholders”), VMware, Inc. and, solely with respect to certain sections therein, EMC and VMW Holdco LLC (“VMW Holdco”). Each of EMC Equity, EMC, and VMW Holdco is a wholly owned subsidiary of Dell Technologies. Pursuant to the Support Agreement, the Dell Stockholders have agreed, among other matters and subject to the terms and conditions therein, in their capacity as holders of shares of Pivotal, to vote in favor of adopting the Merger Agreement, the merger and each of the actions contemplated by the Merger Agreement. The Dell Stockholders also have agreed to certain restrictions on transfer of their shares of the Class B common stock of Pivotal, as further set forth in the Support Agreement. Additionally, pursuant to the Support Agreement, EMC and VMW Holdco, together as the holders of all of the outstanding shares of Class B common stock of VMware, Inc., irrevocably have consented to VMware, Inc. entering into the Merger Agreement and the consummation of the transactions contemplated thereby. The Support Agreement provides that, subject to VMware, Inc.’s ability to consummate the Pivotal acquisition and prior to the transaction closing, VMware, Inc. and Dell Technologies will execute an amendment to the tax sharing agreement between the two companies.

*Commitment For Senior Unsecured Term Loan Facility of VMware, Inc.*

VMware, Inc. received a commitment from a financial institution for a senior unsecured 364-day term loan facility that would provide VMware, Inc. with a borrowing capacity of up to $2.0 billion (the “Commitment”), which, if funded, may be used for general corporate purposes. The initial funding of the Commitment is subject to various customary conditions, including execution and delivery of the definitive loan agreement and related documentation.

*Refinancing Transaction*

On September 5, 2019, the Company initiated a refinancing of its existing $4.9 billion Term Loan B Facility due September 2023, which it intends to replace with a modified $4.0 billion Term Loan B Facility due 2025.  The transaction is expected to close on or about September 18, 2019.

66

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**ITEM 2 *—*MANAGEMENT’S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS**

***This management’s discussion and analysis should be read in conjunction with the audited Consolidated Financial Statements and accompanying Notes included in the Company’s annual report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended February 1, 2019 and the unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report. In addition to historical financial information, the following discussion contains forward-looking statements that reflect our plans, estimates, and beliefs, and that are subject to numerous risks and uncertainties. Our actual results may differ materially from those expressed or implied in any forward-looking statements.***

***Unless otherwise indicated, all results presented are prepared in a manner that complies, in all material respects, with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“GAAP”). Additionally, unless otherwise indicated, all changes identified for the current-period results represent comparisons to results for the prior corresponding fiscal period.***

***Unless the context indicates otherwise, references in this report to “we,” “us,” “our,” the “Company,” and “Dell Technologies” mean Dell Technologies Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries, references to “Dell” mean Dell Inc. and Dell Inc.’s consolidated subsidiaries, and references to “EMC” mean EMC Corporation and EMC Corporation’s consolidated subsidiaries.***

***Our fiscal year is the 52- or 53-week period ending on the Friday nearest January 31. We refer to our fiscal year ending January 31, 2020 and our fiscal year ended February 1, 2019 as “Fiscal 2020” and “Fiscal 2019,” respectively. Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019 include 52 weeks.***

**INTRODUCTION**

Dell Technologies is a leading global end-to-end technology provider, with a comprehensive portfolio of IT hardware, software, and service solutions spanning both traditional infrastructure and emerging multi-cloud technologies that enable our customers to build their digital future and transform how they work and live. We collaborate across key functional areas such as technology and product development and solutions, marketing, go-to-market and global services, and are supported by Dell Financial Services. We believe this operational philosophy enables our platform to seamlessly deliver differentiated and holistic IT solutions to our customers, which has driven significant revenue growth and share gains.

Dell Technologies operates with significant scale and a differentiated breadth of complementary offerings. Digital transformation has become essential to all businesses, and we have expanded our portfolio to include holistic solutions that enable our customers to drive their ongoing digital transformation initiatives. Dell Technologies’ integrated solutions help customers modernize their IT infrastructure, address workforce transformation, and provide critical security solutions to protect against the ever increasing and evolving security threats. With our extensive portfolio and our commitment to innovation, we have the ability to offer secure, integrated solutions that extend from the edge to the core to the cloud, and we are at the forefront of the software-defined and cloud native infrastructure era. Our end-to-end portfolio is supported by a differentiated go-to-market engine, which includes a 40,000-person sales force, a global network of channel partners, and a world-class supply chain that together drive revenue growth and operating efficiencies.

67

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**Products and Services**

We design, develop, manufacture, market, sell, and support a wide range of products and services. We are organized into the following business units, which are our reportable segments: Infrastructure Solutions Group; Client Solutions Group; and VMware.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| *•* | *Infrastructure Solutions Group (“ISG”)* — ISG enables the digital transformation of our customers through our trusted multi-cloud and big data solutions, which are built upon a modern data center infrastructure. Our comprehensive portfolio of advanced storage solutions includes traditional storage solutions as well as next-generation storage solutions (such as all-flash arrays, scale-out file, object platforms, and software-defined solutions), while our server portfolio includes high-performance rack, blade, tower, and hyperscale servers. Our networking portfolio helps our business customers transform and modernize their infrastructure, mobilize and enrich end-user experiences, and accelerate business applications and processes. Our strengths in server, storage, and virtualization software solutions enable us to offer leading converged and hyper-converged solutions, helping customers build modern two-tier IT architecture for simplified management and operations. This allows our customers to accelerate their IT transformation by acquiring scalable integrated IT solutions instead of building and assembling their own IT platforms. ISG also offers attached software, peripherals, and services, including support and deployment, configuration, and extended warranty services. |

We are continuing our journey to simplify our storage portfolio, with the goal of ensuring that we deliver the technology needed for our customers’ digital transformation. As our storage portfolio evolves, we will continue to support our current portfolio of storage solutions.

Approximately half of ISG revenue is generated by sales to customers in the Americas, with the remaining portion derived from sales to customers in the Europe, Middle East, and Africa region (“EMEA”) and the Asia-Pacific and Japan region (“APJ”).

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| *•* | *Client Solutions Group (“CSG”)* — CSG includes branded hardware (such as desktops, workstations, and notebooks) and branded peripherals (such as displays and projectors), as well as third-party software and peripherals. Our computing devices are designed with our commercial and consumer customers’ needs in mind, and we seek to optimize performance, reliability, manageability, design, and security. In addition to our traditional hardware business, we have a portfolio of thin client offerings that we believe will allow us to benefit from the growth trends in cloud computing. For our customers that are seeking to simplify client lifecycle management, Dell PC as a Service offering combines hardware, software, lifecycle services, and financing into one all-encompassing solution that provides predictable pricing per seat per month through Dell Financial Services. CSG also offers attached software, peripherals, and services, including support and deployment, configuration, and extended warranty services. |

Approximately half of CSG revenue is generated by sales to customers in the Americas, with the remaining portion derived from sales to customers in EMEA and APJ.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| *•* | *VMware*— The VMware reportable segment (“VMware”) reflects the operations of VMware, Inc. (NYSE: VMW) within Dell Technologies. |

VMware works with customers in the areas of hybrid cloud, multi-cloud, modern applications, networking and security, and digital workspaces, helping customers manage their IT resources across private clouds and complex multi-cloud, multi-device environments. VMware’s portfolio supports and addresses the key IT priorities of customers: accelerating their cloud journey, empowering digital workspaces, and transforming networking and security. VMware solutions provide a flexible digital foundation to enable the digital transformation of VMware’s customers as they ready their applications, infrastructure, and devices for their future business needs.

Approximately half of VMware revenue is generated by sales to customers in the United States.

68

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

Our other businesses, described below, consist of product and service offerings of Pivotal, Secureworks, RSA Security, Virtustream, and Boomi, each of which is majority-owned by Dell Technologies. These businesses are not classified as reportable segments, either individually or collectively, as the results of the businesses are not material to our overall results and the businesses do not meet the criteria for reportable segments. See Note 18 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report for more information about our other businesses.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| *•* | *Pivotal* (NYSE: PVTL) provides a leading cloud-native platform that makes software development and IT operations a strategic advantage for customers. Pivotal’s cloud-native platform, Pivotal Cloud Foundry, accelerates and streamlines software development by reducing the complexity of building, deploying, and operating new cloud-native applications and modernizing legacy applications. On April 24, 2018, Pivotal completed a registered underwritten initial public offering of its Class A common stock. On August 22, 2019, Pivotal entered into a definitive merger agreement pursuant to which VMware, Inc. will acquire Pivotal. For more information on our ownership of Pivotal and Pivotal’s merger agreement with VMware, Inc., refer to Note 13 and Note 20 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Secureworks* (NASDAQ: SCWX) is a leading global provider of intelligence-driven information security solutions singularly focused on protecting its clients from cyber attacks. The solutions offered by Secureworks enable organizations of varying size and complexity to fortify their cyber defenses to prevent security breaches, detect malicious activity in near real time, prioritize and respond rapidly to security incidents and predict emerging threats. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| *•* | *RSA Security* provides essential cybersecurity solutions engineered to enable organizations to detect, investigate, and respond to advanced attacks, confirm and manage identities, and, ultimately, help reduce IP theft, fraud, and cybercrime. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Virtustream* offers cloud software and infrastructure-as-a-service solutions that enable customers to migrate, run, and manage mission-critical applications in cloud-based IT environments. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Boomi* specializes in cloud-based integration, connecting information between existing on-premise and cloud-based applications to ensure business processes are optimized, data is accurate and workflow is reliable. |

We recently unveiled the Dell Technologies Cloud, a new set of cloud infrastructure solutions to make hybrid cloud environments simpler to deploy and manage. The Dell Technologies Cloud portfolio consists of the new Dell Technologies Cloud Platforms and the new Data Center-as-a-Service offering, VMware Cloud on Dell EMC. These solutions enable a flexible range of IT and management options with tight integration and a single vendor experience for purchasing, deployment, services, and financing, giving customers more control as the operational hub of their hybrid clouds.

We believe the increasing collaboration, innovation, and coordination of the operations and strategies of our businesses, as well as our differentiated go-to-market model, will continue to drive revenue synergies. Through our coordinated research and development activities, we are able to jointly engineer leading innovative solutions that incorporate the distinct set of hardware, software, and services across our businesses.

Our products and services offerings are continually evolving in response to industry dynamics. As a result, reclassifications of certain products and services solutions in major product categories may be required. For further discussion regarding our current reportable segments, see “Results of Operations — Business Unit Results.”

**Dell Financial Services**

Dell Financial Services and its affiliates (“DFS”) support our businesses by offering and arranging various financing options and services for our customers in North America, Europe, Australia, and New Zealand. DFS originates, collects, and services customer receivables primarily related to the purchase or use of our product, software, and service solutions. We also arrange financing for some of our customers in various countries where DFS does not currently operate as a captive enterprise. DFS further strengthens our customer relationships through its flexible consumption models, which enable us to offer our customers the option to pay over time and, in certain cases, based on utilization, to provide them with financial flexibility to meet their changing technological requirements. The results of these operations are allocated to our segments based on the underlying product or service financed. For additional information about our financing arrangements, see Note 4 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report.

69

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**Strategic Investments and Acquisitions**

As part of our strategy, we will continue to evaluate opportunities for strategic investments through our venture capital investment arm, Dell Technologies Capital, with a focus on emerging technology areas that are relevant to the Dell Technologies unique family of businesses and that will complement our existing portfolio of solutions. Our investment areas include storage, software-defined networking, management and orchestration, security, machine learning and artificial intelligence, Big Data and analytics, cloud, Internet of Things (“IoT”), and software development operations. In addition to these investments, we also may make disciplined acquisitions targeting businesses that advance our strategic objectives. As of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, Dell Technologies held strategic investments of $0.8 billion and $1.0 billion, respectively.

**Business Trends and Challenges**

We are seeing an accelerated rate of change in the IT industry. Organizations are embracing digital technology to achieve their business objectives. Our vision is to be an essential infrastructure company and leader in end-user computing, data center infrastructure solutions, data management, virtualization, IoT, and cloud software that our customers continue to trust and rely on for their IT solutions and their broader business transformation objectives as they embrace the hybrid multi-cloud environment of today.

We continue to invest in research and development, sales, and other key areas of our business to deliver superior products and solutions capabilities and to drive execution of long-term sustainable growth. We believe that our results will benefit from an integrated go-to-market strategy, including enhanced coordination among the family of Dell Technologies companies, and from our differentiated products and solutions capabilities. We intend to continue to execute on our business model and seek to balance liquidity, profitability, and growth to position our company for long-term success.

We expect that ISG will continue to be impacted by the changing nature of the IT infrastructure market and competitive environment. In our server business, we may continue to be selective in determining whether to pursue certain large transactions as we drive for balanced growth and profitability. With our scale and strong product portfolio, we believe we are well positioned to respond to ongoing competitive dynamics. Cloud-native applications are expected to continue as a primary growth driver in the infrastructure market as IT organizations increasingly become multi-cloud environments. We believe the complementary cloud solutions across our business strongly position us to meet these demands for our customers, who are increasingly looking to leverage different forms of cloud-based computing. We also continue to be impacted by the emerging trends of enterprises deploying software-defined storage, hyper-converged infrastructure, and modular solutions based on server-centric architectures. These trends are changing the way customers are consuming our traditional storage offerings, and we are focused on enabling new capabilities in our storage portfolio. Offsetting such trends, however, is the unprecedented data growth throughout all industries, which is generating continued demand for our storage products and services. We have leading solutions through our ISG and VMware data center offerings. In addition, through our research and development efforts, we expect to develop new solutions in this rapidly changing industry that we believe will enable us to continue to provide superior solutions to our customers.

In ISG, we are also seeing continued interest in flexible consumption models by our customers as they seek to build greater flexibility into their cost structures. These solutions are generally multi-year contracts that typically result in recognition of revenue over the term of the arrangement. We expect these flexible consumption models will further strengthen our customer relationships and will provide more predictable revenue streams over time.

We are able to leverage our traditional strength in the PC market to offer solutions and services that provide higher-value, recurring revenue streams. Given current market trends, we expect that the demand environment will continue to be cyclical and that competitive dynamics will continue to pressure our CSG business. However, we are committed to a long-term growth strategy that we believe will benefit from the consolidation trends that are occurring in our markets. Our CSG offerings are an important element of our strategy, generating strong cash flow and opportunities for cross-selling of complementary solutions.

70

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

We manage our business on a U.S. dollar basis. However, we have a large global presence, generating approximately half of our revenue by sales to customers outside of the United States during both the first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019. As a result, our revenue can be impacted by fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates. We utilize a comprehensive hedging strategy intended to mitigate the impact of foreign currency volatility over time, and we adjust pricing when possible to further minimize foreign currency impacts. During the past twelve months, there has been a sustained weakening of foreign currencies relative to the U.S. dollar, and we will continue to respond to foreign currency fluctuations with appropriate strategies in the second half of Fiscal 2020.

**Key Performance Metrics**

Our key performance metrics are net revenue, operating income, adjusted EBITDA, and cash flows from operations, which are discussed elsewhere in this report.

**Class V Transaction**

On December 28, 2018, we completed a transaction (“Class V transaction”) in which we paid $14.0 billion in cash and issued 149,387,617 shares of our Class C Common Stock to holders of our Class V Common Stock in exchange for all outstanding shares of Class V Common Stock. The non-cash consideration portion of the Class V transaction totaled $6.9 billion. As a result of the Class V transaction, the tracking stock feature of Dell Technologies’ capital structure was terminated. The Class C Common Stock is traded on the New York Stock Exchange.

The aggregate cash consideration and the fees and expenses incurred in connection with the Class V transaction were funded with proceeds of $3.67 billion from new term loans under our senior secured credit facilities, proceeds of a margin loan financing in an aggregate principal amount of $1.35 billion, proceeds of Dell Technologies’ pro-rata portion, in the amount of $8.87 billion, of a special $11 billion cash dividend paid by VMware, Inc. in connection with the Class V transaction, and cash on hand at Dell Technologies and its subsidiaries. See Note 6 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report for information about the debt incurred by us to finance the Class V transaction.

71

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**NON-GAAP FINANCIAL MEASURES**

In this management’s discussion and analysis, we use supplemental measures of our performance which are derived from our consolidated financial information but which are not presented in our consolidated financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP. These non-GAAP financial measures include non-GAAP product net revenue; non-GAAP services net revenue; non-GAAP net revenue; non-GAAP product gross margin; non-GAAP services gross margin; non-GAAP gross margin; non-GAAP operating expenses; non-GAAP operating income; non-GAAP net income; earnings before interest and other, net, taxes, depreciation, and amortization (“EBITDA”); and adjusted EBITDA.

We use non-GAAP financial measures to supplement financial information presented on a GAAP basis. We believe that excluding certain items from our GAAP results allows management to better understand our consolidated financial performance from period to period and better project our future consolidated financial performance as forecasts are developed at a level of detail different from that used to prepare GAAP-based financial measures. Moreover, we believe these non-GAAP financial measures provide our stakeholders with useful information to help them evaluate our operating results by facilitating an enhanced understanding of our operating performance and enabling them to make more meaningful period to period comparisons. There are limitations to the use of the non-GAAP financial measures presented in this report. Our non-GAAP financial measures may not be comparable to similarly titled measures of other companies. Other companies, including companies in our industry, may calculate non-GAAP financial measures differently than we do, limiting the usefulness of those measures for comparative purposes.

Non-GAAP product net revenue, non-GAAP services net revenue, non-GAAP net revenue, non-GAAP product gross margin, non-GAAP services gross margin, non-GAAP gross margin, non-GAAP operating expenses, non-GAAP operating income, and non-GAAP net income, as defined by us, exclude amortization of intangible assets, the impact of purchase accounting, transaction-related expenses, stock-based compensation expense, other corporate expenses and, for non-GAAP net income, fair value adjustments on equity adjustments and an aggregate adjustment for income taxes. As the excluded items have a material impact on our financial results, our management compensates for this limitation by relying primarily on our GAAP results and using non-GAAP financial measures supplementally or for projections when comparable GAAP financial measures are not available. The non-GAAP financial measures are not meant to be considered as indicators of performance in isolation from or as a substitute for net revenue, gross margin, operating expenses, operating income, or net income prepared in accordance with GAAP, and should be read only in conjunction with financial information presented on a GAAP basis.

Reconciliations of each non-GAAP financial measure to its most directly comparable GAAP financial measure are presented below. We encourage you to review the reconciliations in conjunction with the presentation of the non-GAAP financial measures for each of the periods presented. The discussion below includes information on each of the excluded items as well as our reasons for excluding them from our non-GAAP results. In future fiscal periods, we may exclude such items and may incur income and expenses similar to these excluded items. Accordingly, the exclusion of these items and other similar items in our non-GAAP presentation should not be interpreted as implying that these items are non-recurring, infrequent, or unusual.

Dell Technologies’ non-GAAP net income now excludes, among other items, fair value adjustments on equity investments as well as discrete tax items. These items were not excluded in the prior presentation of our non-GAAP net income for the three and six months ended August 3, 2018. Upon our return to the public markets in December 2018 as a result of the Class V transaction, we reevaluated the presentation of non-GAAP net income and made these changes to facilitate the evaluation of our current operating performance and the comparability of our current operating performance to our past operating performance. Non-GAAP net income for the three and six months ended August 3, 2018 has been recast to reflect the current presentation.

72

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

The following is a summary of the items excluded from the most comparable GAAP financial measures to calculate our non-GAAP financial measures:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Amortization of Intangible Assets*—Amortization of intangible assets primarily consists of amortization of customer relationships, developed technology, and trade names. In connection with our acquisition by merger of EMC on September 7, 2016, referred to as the EMC merger transaction, and the acquisition of Dell Inc. by Dell Technologies Inc. on October 29, 2013, referred to as the going-private transaction, all of the tangible and intangible assets and liabilities of EMC and Dell, respectively, were accounted for and recognized at fair value on the transaction dates. Accordingly, for the periods presented, amortization of intangible assets represents amortization associated with intangible assets recognized in connection with the EMC merger transaction and the going-private transaction. Amortization charges for purchased intangible assets are significantly impacted by the timing and magnitude of our acquisitions, and these charges may vary in amount from period to period. We exclude these charges for purposes of calculating the non-GAAP financial measures presented below to facilitate a more meaningful evaluation of our current operating performance and comparisons to our past operating performance. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| *•* | *Impact of Purchase Accounting*—The impact of purchase accounting includes purchase accounting adjustments related to the EMC merger transaction and, to a lesser extent, the going-private transaction, recorded under the acquisition method of accounting in accordance with the accounting guidance for business combinations. This guidance prescribes that the purchase price be allocated to assets acquired and liabilities assumed based on the estimated fair value of such assets and liabilities on the date of the transaction. Accordingly, all of the assets and liabilities acquired in the EMC merger transaction and the going-private transaction were accounted for and recognized at fair value as of the respective transaction dates, and the fair value adjustments are being amortized over the estimated useful lives in the periods following the transactions. The fair value adjustments primarily relate to deferred revenue, inventory, and property, plant, and equipment. Although the purchase accounting adjustments and related amortization of those adjustments are reflected in our GAAP results, we evaluate the operating results of the underlying businesses on a non-GAAP basis, after removing such adjustments. We believe that excluding the impact of purchase accounting provides results that are useful in understanding our current operating performance and provides more meaningful comparisons to our past operating performance. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Transaction-related Expenses —*Transaction-related expenses consist of acquisition, integration, and divestiture related costs, and are expensed as incurred. These expenses primarily represent costs for legal, banking, consulting, and advisory services, as well as certain compensatory retention awards directly related to the EMC merger transaction.  During the first six months of Fiscal 2019, this category also included $116 million of expenses related to integration of our inventory policies and management process related to customer evaluation units. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| *•* | *Stock-based Compensation Expense*— Stock-based compensation expense consists of equity awards granted based on the estimated fair value of those awards at grant date. For service-based stock options, we typically estimate the fair value using the Black-Scholes valuation model and for performance-based awards containing a market condition, we estimate the fair value using the Monte Carlo valuation model. Our non-GAAP adjustment for stock-based compensation expense was previously included within the non-GAAP adjustment for other corporate expenses. Due to the growth in our stock-based compensation expense, we have revised our presentation to present stock-based compensation expense separately in our reconciliations presented below. Stock-based compensation expense varies from period to period and is significantly impacted by our share price and the various assumptions used for valuation purposes. Therefore, although we will incur this type of expense in the future, we believe that eliminating these charges for purposes of calculating the non-GAAP financial measures presented below facilitates a more meaningful evaluation of our current operating performance and comparisons to our past operating performance. See Note 16 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information on equity award issuances. |

73

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| *•* | *Other Corporate Expenses*— Other corporate expenses consists primarily of severance, facility action, and other costs. Severance costs are primarily related to severance and benefits for employees terminated pursuant to cost savings initiatives. We continue to integrate owned and leased facilities and may incur additional costs as we seek opportunities for operational efficiencies. Other corporate expenses vary from period to period and are significantly impacted by the timing and nature of these events. Therefore, although we may incur these types of expenses in the future, we believe that eliminating these charges for purposes of calculating the non-GAAP financial measures presented below facilitates a more meaningful evaluation of our current operating performance and comparisons to our past operating performance. During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, this category includes Virtustream gross impairment charges of $619 million. See Note 8 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information on Virtustream impairment charges. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Fair Value Adjustments on Equity Investments* — Fair value adjustments on equity investments primarily consists of the gain (loss) on strategic investments, which includes the recurring fair value adjustments of investments in publicly-traded companies, as well as those in privately-held companies, which are adjusted for observable price changes, and to a lesser extent any potential impairments. Given the volatility in the ongoing adjustments to the valuation of these strategic investments, we believe that excluding these gains and losses for purposes of calculating non-GAAP net income presented below facilitates a more meaningful evaluation of our current operating performance and comparisons to our past operating performance. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Aggregate Adjustment for Income Taxes* — The aggregate adjustment for income taxes is the estimated combined income tax effect for the adjustments described above, as well as an adjustment for discrete tax items. Due to the variability in recognition of discrete tax items from period to period, we believe that excluding these benefits or charges for purposes of calculating non-GAAP net income facilitates a more meaningful evaluation of our current operating performance and comparisons to our past operating performance. The tax effects are determined based on the tax jurisdictions where the above items were incurred. This category includes discrete tax benefits of $405 million and $4.5 billion, recorded in the first and second quarters of Fiscal 2020, respectively, for intra-entity asset transfers that were completed during the respective quarters. See Note 11 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information on our income taxes. |

74

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

The table below presents a reconciliation of each non-GAAP financial measure to the most directly comparable GAAP measure for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **% Change** | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **% Change** | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions, except percentages) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Product net revenue | $ | 18,110 |  |  | — | % |  | $ | 18,149 |  |  | $ | 34,864 |  |  | — | % |  | $ | 34,820 |  |
| Non-GAAP adjustments: |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Impact of purchase accounting | 6 | |  |  |  | |  | 18 | |  |  | 10 | |  |  |  | |  | 35 | |  |
| Non-GAAP product net revenue | $ | 18,116 |  |  | — | % |  | $ | 18,167 |  |  | $ | 34,874 |  |  | — | % |  | $ | 34,855 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Services net revenue | $ | 5,260 |  |  | 10 | % |  | $ | 4,793 |  |  | $ | 10,414 |  |  | 10 | % |  | $ | 9,478 |  |
| Non-GAAP adjustments: |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Impact of purchase accounting | 78 | |  |  |  | |  | 162 | |  |  | 156 | |  |  |  | |  | 332 | |  |
| Non-GAAP services net revenue | $ | 5,338 |  |  | 8 | % |  | $ | 4,955 |  |  | $ | 10,570 |  |  | 8 | % |  | $ | 9,810 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Net revenue | $ | 23,370 |  |  | 2 | % |  | $ | 22,942 |  |  | $ | 45,278 |  |  | 2 | % |  | $ | 44,298 |  |
| Non-GAAP adjustments: |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Impact of purchase accounting | 84 | |  |  |  | |  | 180 | |  |  | 166 | |  |  |  | |  | 367 | |  |
| Non-GAAP net revenue | $ | 23,454 |  |  | 1 | % |  | $ | 23,122 |  |  | $ | 45,444 |  |  | 2 | % |  | $ | 44,665 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Product gross margin | $ | 4,221 |  |  | 32 | % |  | $ | 3,206 |  |  | $ | 7,896 |  |  | 26 | % |  | $ | 6,271 |  |
| Non-GAAP adjustments: |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Amortization of intangibles | 519 | |  |  |  | |  | 718 | |  |  | 1,038 | |  |  |  | |  | 1,428 | |  |
| Impact of purchase accounting | 7 | |  |  |  | |  | 23 | |  |  | 13 | |  |  |  | |  | 46 | |  |
| Transaction-related expenses | (3 | | ) |  |  | |  | 21 | |  |  | (5 | | ) |  |  | |  | 137 | |  |
| Stock-based compensation expense | 4 | |  |  |  | |  | 1 | |  |  | 6 | |  |  |  | |  | 3 | |  |
| Other corporate expenses | 5 | |  |  |  | |  | 1 | |  |  | 9 | |  |  |  | |  | 3 | |  |
| Non-GAAP product gross margin | $ | 4,753 |  |  | 20 | % |  | $ | 3,970 |  |  | $ | 8,957 |  |  | 14 | % |  | $ | 7,888 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Services gross margin | $ | 3,105 |  |  | 6 | % |  | $ | 2,917 |  |  | $ | 6,227 |  |  | 9 | % |  | $ | 5,730 |  |
| Non-GAAP adjustments: |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Impact of purchase accounting | 78 | |  |  |  | |  | 162 | |  |  | 156 | |  |  |  | |  | 332 | |  |
| Transaction-related expenses | 3 | |  |  |  | |  | — | |  |  | — | |  |  |  | |  | — | |  |
| Stock-based compensation expense | 28 | |  |  |  | |  | 17 | |  |  | 52 | |  |  |  | |  | 31 | |  |
| Other corporate expenses | 19 | |  |  |  | |  | — | |  |  | 28 | |  |  |  | |  | 4 | |  |
| Non-GAAP services gross margin | $ | 3,233 |  |  | 4 | % |  | $ | 3,096 |  |  | $ | 6,463 |  |  | 6 | % |  | $ | 6,097 |  |

75

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **% Change** | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **% Change** | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions, except percentages) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Gross margin | $ | 7,326 |  |  | 20 | % |  | $ | 6,123 |  |  | $ | 14,123 |  |  | 18 | % |  | $ | 12,001 |  |
| Non-GAAP adjustments: |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Amortization of intangibles | 519 | |  |  |  | |  | 718 | |  |  | 1,038 | |  |  |  | |  | 1,428 | |  |
| Impact of purchase accounting | 85 | |  |  |  | |  | 185 | |  |  | 169 | |  |  |  | |  | 378 | |  |
| Transaction-related expenses | — | |  |  |  | |  | 21 | |  |  | (5 | | ) |  |  | |  | 137 | |  |
| Stock-based compensation expense | 32 | |  |  |  | |  | 18 | |  |  | 58 | |  |  |  | |  | 34 | |  |
| Other corporate expenses | 24 | |  |  |  | |  | 1 | |  |  | 37 | |  |  |  | |  | 7 | |  |
| Non-GAAP gross margin | $ | 7,986 |  |  | 13 | % |  | $ | 7,066 |  |  | $ | 15,420 |  |  | 10 | % |  | $ | 13,985 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Operating expenses | $ | 6,807 |  |  | 11 | % |  | $ | 6,136 |  |  | $ | 13,054 |  |  | 7 | % |  | $ | 12,167 |  |
| Non-GAAP adjustments: |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Amortization of intangibles | (541 | | ) |  |  | |  | (808 | | ) |  | (1,239 | | ) |  |  | |  | (1,620 | | ) |
| Impact of purchase accounting | (17 | | ) |  |  | |  | (30 | | ) |  | (34 | | ) |  |  | |  | (59 | | ) |
| Transaction-related expenses | (47 | | ) |  |  | |  | (83 | | ) |  | (94 | | ) |  |  | |  | (133 | | ) |
| Stock-based compensation expense | (269 | | ) |  |  | |  | (198 | | ) |  | (506 | | ) |  |  | |  | (381 | | ) |
| Other corporate expenses | (690 | | ) |  |  | |  | (59 | | ) |  | (700 | | ) |  |  | |  | (123 | | ) |
| Non-GAAP operating expenses | $ | 5,243 |  |  | 6 | % |  | $ | 4,958 |  |  | $ | 10,481 |  |  | 6 | % |  | $ | 9,851 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Operating income (loss) | $ | 519 |  |  | NM |  |  | $ | (13 | ) |  | $ | 1,069 |  |  | 744 | % |  | $ | (166 | ) |
| Non-GAAP adjustments: |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Amortization of intangibles | 1,060 | |  |  |  | |  | 1,526 | |  |  | 2,277 | |  |  |  | |  | 3,048 | |  |
| Impact of purchase accounting | 102 | |  |  |  | |  | 215 | |  |  | 203 | |  |  |  | |  | 437 | |  |
| Transaction-related expenses | 47 | |  |  |  | |  | 104 | |  |  | 89 | |  |  |  | |  | 270 | |  |
| Stock-based compensation expense | 301 | |  |  |  | |  | 216 | |  |  | 564 | |  |  |  | |  | 415 | |  |
| Other corporate expenses | 714 | |  |  |  | |  | 60 | |  |  | 737 | |  |  |  | |  | 130 | |  |
| Non-GAAP operating income | $ | 2,743 |  |  | 30 | % |  | $ | 2,108 |  |  | $ | 4,939 |  |  | 19 | % |  | $ | 4,134 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Net income (loss) | $ | 4,232 |  |  | NM |  |  | $ | (461 | ) |  | $ | 4,561 |  |  | 557 | % |  | $ | (999 | ) |
| Non-GAAP adjustments: |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Amortization of intangibles | 1,060 | |  |  |  | |  | 1,526 | |  |  | 2,277 | |  |  |  | |  | 3,048 | |  |
| Impact of purchase accounting | 102 | |  |  |  | |  | 215 | |  |  | 203 | |  |  |  | |  | 437 | |  |
| Transaction-related expenses | 47 | |  |  |  | |  | 104 | |  |  | 89 | |  |  |  | |  | 270 | |  |
| Stock-based compensation expense | 301 | |  |  |  | |  | 216 | |  |  | 564 | |  |  |  | |  | 415 | |  |
| Other corporate expenses | 714 | |  |  |  | |  | 60 | |  |  | 737 | |  |  |  | |  | 130 | |  |
| Fair value adjustments on equity investments | (80 | | ) |  |  | |  | (139 | | ) |  | (142 | | ) |  |  | |  | (246 | | ) |
| Aggregate adjustment for income taxes | (4,625 | | ) |  |  | |  | (262 | | ) |  | (5,329 | | ) |  |  | |  | (617 | | ) |
| Non-GAAP net income (a) | $ | 1,751 |  |  | 39 | % |  | $ | 1,259 |  |  | $ | 2,960 |  |  | 21 | % |  | $ | 2,438 |  |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (a) | Non-GAAP net income has been recast to exclude fair value adjustments on equity investments, the corresponding tax effects of those adjustments, and discrete tax items. |

76

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

In addition to the above measures, we also use EBITDA and adjusted EBITDA to provide additional information for evaluation of our operating performance. Adjusted EBITDA excludes purchase accounting adjustments related to the EMC merger transaction and the going-private transaction, acquisition, integration, and divestiture related costs, severance, facility action, and other costs, and stock-based compensation expense. We believe that, due to the non-operational nature of the purchase accounting entries, it is appropriate to exclude these adjustments.

As is the case with the non-GAAP measures presented above, users should consider the limitations of using EBITDA and adjusted EBITDA, including the fact that those measures do not provide a complete measure of our operating performance. EBITDA and adjusted EBITDA do not purport to be alternatives to net income (loss) as measures of operating performance or to cash flows from operating activities as a measure of liquidity. In particular, EBITDA and adjusted EBITDA are not intended to be a measure of free cash flow available for management’s discretionary use, as these measures do not consider certain cash requirements, such as working capital needs, capital expenditures, contractual commitments, interest payments, tax payments, and other debt service requirements.

The table below presents a reconciliation of EBITDA and adjusted EBITDA to net income (loss) for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **% Change** | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **% Change** | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions, except percentages) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Net income (loss) | $ | 4,232 |  |  | NM |  |  | $ | (461 | ) |  | $ | 4,561 |  |  | 557 | % |  | $ | (999 | ) |
| Adjustments: |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Interest and other, net (a) | 630 | |  |  |  | |  | 455 | |  |  | 1,323 | |  |  |  | |  | 925 | |  |
| Income tax benefit (b) | (4,343 | | ) |  |  | |  | (7 | | ) |  | (4,815 | | ) |  |  | |  | (92 | | ) |
| Depreciation and amortization | 1,498 | |  |  |  | |  | 1,931 | |  |  | 3,114 | |  |  |  | |  | 3,845 | |  |
| EBITDA | $ | 2,017 |  |  | 5 | % |  | $ | 1,918 |  |  | $ | 4,183 |  |  | 14 | % |  | $ | 3,679 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| EBITDA | $ | 2,017 |  |  | 5 | % |  | $ | 1,918 |  |  | $ | 4,183 |  |  | 14 | % |  | $ | 3,679 |  |
| Adjustments: |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| Stock-based compensation expense | 301 | |  |  |  | |  | 216 | |  |  | 564 | |  |  |  | |  | 415 | |  |
| Impact of purchase accounting (c) | 84 | |  |  |  | |  | 145 | |  |  | 167 | |  |  |  | |  | 367 | |  |
| Transaction-related expenses (d) | 47 | |  |  |  | |  | 85 | |  |  | 89 | |  |  |  | |  | 251 | |  |
| Other corporate expenses (e) | 707 | |  |  |  | |  | 95 | |  |  | 726 | |  |  |  | |  | 130 | |  |
| Adjusted EBITDA | $ | 3,156 |  |  | 28 | % |  | $ | 2,459 |  |  | $ | 5,729 |  |  | 18 | % |  | $ | 4,842 |  |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (a) | See “Results of Operations — Interest and Other, Net” for more information on the components of interest and other, net. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (b) | See Note 11 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information on discrete tax benefits recorded for intra-company asset transfers during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (c) | This amount includes the non-cash purchase accounting adjustments related to the EMC merger transaction and the going-private transaction. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (d) | Transaction-related expenses includes acquisition, integration, and divestiture related costs. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (e) | Other corporate expenses includes impairment charges and severance, facility action, and other costs. See Note 8 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements for additional information on Virtustream impairment charges. |

77

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**RESULTS OF OPERATIONS**

**Consolidated Results**

The following table summarizes our consolidated results for each of the periods presented. Unless otherwise indicated, all changes identified for the current-period results represent comparisons to results for the prior corresponding fiscal period.

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | |  |  | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | | | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | |  |  | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | | | | |
|  | **Dollars** | | |  | **% of Net Revenue** | |  | **% Change** | |  | **Dollars** | | |  | **% of Net Revenue** | |  | **Dollars** | | |  | **% of Net Revenue** | |  | **% Change** | |  | **Dollars** | | |  | **% of Net Revenue** | |
|  | (in millions, except percentages) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Net revenue:* |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |
| Product | $ | 18,110 |  |  | 77.5 | % |  | — | % |  | $ | 18,149 |  |  | 79.1 | % |  | $ | 34,864 |  |  | 77.0 | % |  | — | % |  | $ | 34,820 |  |  | 78.6 | % |
| Services | 5,260 | |  |  | 22.5 | % |  | 10 | % |  | 4,793 | |  |  | 20.9 | % |  | 10,414 | |  |  | 23.0 | % |  | 10 | % |  | 9,478 | |  |  | 21.4 | % |
| Total net revenue | $ | 23,370 |  |  | 100.0 | % |  | 2 | % |  | $ | 22,942 |  |  | 100.0 | % |  | $ | 45,278 |  |  | 100.0 | % |  | 2 | % |  | $ | 44,298 |  |  | 100.0 | % |
| *Gross margin:* |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |
| Product (a) | $ | 4,221 |  |  | 23.3 | % |  | 32 | % |  | $ | 3,206 |  |  | 17.7 | % |  | $ | 7,896 |  |  | 22.6 | % |  | 26 | % |  | $ | 6,271 |  |  | 18.0 | % |
| Services (b) | 3,105 | |  |  | 59.0 | % |  | 6 | % |  | 2,917 | |  |  | 60.9 | % |  | 6,227 | |  |  | 59.8 | % |  | 9 | % |  | 5,730 | |  |  | 60.5 | % |
| Total gross margin | $ | 7,326 |  |  | 31.3 | % |  | 20 | % |  | $ | 6,123 |  |  | 26.7 | % |  | $ | 14,123 |  |  | 31.2 | % |  | 18 | % |  | $ | 12,001 |  |  | 27.1 | % |
| Operating expenses | $ | 6,807 |  |  | 29.1 | % |  | 11 | % |  | $ | 6,136 |  |  | 26.8 | % |  | $ | 13,054 |  |  | 28.8 | % |  | 7 | % |  | $ | 12,167 |  |  | 27.5 | % |
| Operating income (loss) | $ | 519 |  |  | 2.2 | % |  | NM |  |  | $ | (13 | ) |  | (0.1 | )% |  | $ | 1,069 |  |  | 2.4 | % |  | 744 | % |  | $ | (166 | ) |  | (0.4 | )% |
| Net income (loss) | $ | 4,232 |  |  | 18.1 | % |  | NM |  |  | $ | (461 | ) |  | (2.0 | )% |  | $ | 4,561 |  |  | 10.1 | % |  | 557 | % |  | $ | (999 | ) |  | (2.3 | )% |
| Net income (loss) attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. | $ | 3,416 |  |  | 14.6 | % |  | 785 | % |  | $ | (499 | ) |  | (2.2 | )% |  | $ | 3,709 |  |  | 8.2 | % |  | 427 | % |  | $ | (1,135 | ) |  | (2.6 | )% |
|  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |
| ***Non-GAAP Financial Information*** | | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |
| *Non-GAAP net revenue:* |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |
| Product | $ | 18,116 |  |  | 77.2 | % |  | — | % |  | $ | 18,167 |  |  | 78.6 | % |  | $ | 34,874 |  |  | 76.7 | % |  | — | % |  | $ | 34,855 |  |  | 78.0 | % |
| Services | 5,338 | |  |  | 22.8 | % |  | 8 | % |  | 4,955 | |  |  | 21.4 | % |  | 10,570 | |  |  | 23.3 | % |  | 8 | % |  | 9,810 | |  |  | 22.0 | % |
| Total non-GAAP net revenue | $ | 23,454 |  |  | 100.0 | % |  | 1 | % |  | $ | 23,122 |  |  | 100.0 | % |  | $ | 45,444 |  |  | 100.0 | % |  | 2 | % |  | $ | 44,665 |  |  | 100.0 | % |
| *Non-GAAP gross margin:* |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |
| Product (a) | $ | 4,753 |  |  | 26.2 | % |  | 20 | % |  | $ | 3,970 |  |  | 21.9 | % |  | $ | 8,957 |  |  | 25.7 | % |  | 14 | % |  | $ | 7,888 |  |  | 22.6 | % |
| Services (b) | 3,233 | |  |  | 60.6 | % |  | 4 | % |  | 3,096 | |  |  | 62.5 | % |  | 6,463 | |  |  | 61.1 | % |  | 6 | % |  | 6,097 | |  |  | 62.2 | % |
| Total non-GAAP gross margin | $ | 7,986 |  |  | 34.0 | % |  | 13 | % |  | $ | 7,066 |  |  | 30.6 | % |  | $ | 15,420 |  |  | 33.9 | % |  | 10 | % |  | $ | 13,985 |  |  | 31.3 | % |
| Non-GAAP operating expenses | $ | 5,243 |  |  | 22.4 | % |  | 6 | % |  | $ | 4,958 |  |  | 21.4 | % |  | $ | 10,481 |  |  | 23.1 | % |  | 6 | % |  | $ | 9,851 |  |  | 22.1 | % |
| Non-GAAP operating income | $ | 2,743 |  |  | 11.7 | % |  | 30 | % |  | $ | 2,108 |  |  | 9.1 | % |  | $ | 4,939 |  |  | 10.9 | % |  | 19 | % |  | $ | 4,134 |  |  | 9.3 | % |
| Non-GAAP net income (c) | $ | 1,751 |  |  | 7.5 | % |  | 39 | % |  | $ | 1,259 |  |  | 5.4 | % |  | $ | 2,960 |  |  | 6.5 | % |  | 21 | % |  | $ | 2,438 |  |  | 5.5 | % |
| EBITDA | $ | 2,017 |  |  | 8.6 | % |  | 5 | % |  | $ | 1,918 |  |  | 8.3 | % |  | $ | 4,183 |  |  | 9.2 | % |  | 14 | % |  | $ | 3,679 |  |  | 8.2 | % |
| Adjusted EBITDA | $ | 3,156 |  |  | 13.5 | % |  | 28 | % |  | $ | 2,459 |  |  | 10.6 | % |  | $ | 5,729 |  |  | 12.6 | % |  | 18 | % |  | $ | 4,842 |  |  | 10.8 | % |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (a) | Product gross margin percentages represent product gross margin as a percentage of product net revenue, and non-GAAP product gross margin percentages represent non-GAAP product gross margin as a percentage of non-GAAP product net revenue. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (b) | Services gross margin percentages represent services gross margin as a percentage of services net revenue, and non-GAAP services gross margin percentages represent non-GAAP services gross margin as a percentage of non-GAAP services net revenue. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (c) | Non-GAAP net income has been recast to exclude fair value adjustments on equity investments, the corresponding tax effects of those adjustments, and discrete tax items. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| NM | Not meaningful |

78

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

Non-GAAP product net revenue, non-GAAP services net revenue, non-GAAP net revenue, non-GAAP product gross margin, non-GAAP services gross margin, non-GAAP gross margin, non-GAAP operating expenses, non-GAAP operating income, non-GAAP net income, EBITDA, and adjusted EBITDA are not measurements of financial performance prepared in accordance with GAAP. Non-GAAP financial measures as a percentage of net revenue are calculated based on non-GAAP net revenue. See “Non‑GAAP Financial Measures” for additional information about these non-GAAP financial measures, including our reasons for including these measures, material limitations with respect to the usefulness of the measures, and a reconciliation of each non-GAAP financial measure to the most directly comparable GAAP financial measure.

**Overview**

During both the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, our net revenue increased 2%. During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, our non-GAAP net revenue increased 1% and 2%, respectively. The increases in net revenue and non-GAAP net revenue were attributable to increases in net revenue in CSG and VMware. The increase in CSG revenue primarily resulted from strong execution by the business, aided by the Microsoft Windows 10 operating system refresh cycle. During the first six months of Fiscal 2020, we benefited from the strength of our broad IT solutions portfolio, which helped us navigate market volatility and competitive pressures. We believe we are well-positioned for long-term profitable growth while also maintaining the ability to adjust as needed to changing market conditions with complementary solutions across our businesses.

During the second quarter of Fiscal 2020, our operating income was $519 million compared to an operating loss of $13 million during the second quarter of Fiscal 2019. During the first six months of Fiscal 2020, our operating income was $1.1 billion compared to an operating loss of $166 million during the first six months of Fiscal 2019. The increases in our operating income for the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 were primarily attributable to an increase in operating income for CSG due to lower component costs and a decrease in amortization of intangible assets. These benefits were partially offset by an increase in other corporate expenses, which primarily include Virtustream impairment charges.

Amortization of intangible assets and other corporate expenses that impacted our operating income totaled $1.8 billion and $1.6 billion for the second quarter of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, respectively, and $3.0 billion and 3.2 billion for the first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, respectively. Excluding these costs, the impact of purchase accounting, stock-based compensation expense, and transaction-related expenses, our non-GAAP operating income was $2.7 billion and $2.1 billion during the second quarter of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, respectively. During the first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, our non-GAAP operating income was $4.9 billion and $4.1 billion, respectively. The increases in our non-GAAP operating income for the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 were primarily due to an increase in operating income for CSG.

Cash provided by operating activities was $4.0 billion during the first six months of Fiscal 2020 compared to $3.8 billion for the first six months of Fiscal 2019. The increase in operating cash flows during the first six months of Fiscal 2020 was primarily driven by improved profitability and continued working capital discipline. See “Market Conditions, Liquidity, and Capital Commitments” for further information on our cash flow metrics.

**Net Revenue**

During both the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, our net revenue increased 2%. During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, our non-GAAP net revenue increased 1% and 2%, respectively. The increases in net revenue and non-GAAP net revenue were primarily attributable to increases in net revenue in CSG and VMware. See “Business Unit Results” for further information.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Product Net Revenue* — Product net revenue includes revenue from the sale of hardware products and software licenses. During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, product net revenue and non-GAAP product net revenue were both unchanged. Increases in product revenue for CSG and VMware were offset during the period by declines in ISG server and networking revenue. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Services Net Revenue*— Services net revenue includes revenue from our services offerings and support services related to hardware products and software licenses. During both the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, services net revenue and non-GAAP services net revenue increased 10% and 8%, respectively. These increases were primarily due to an increase in services revenue for hardware support and deployment and software maintenance due to growth in the business. A substantial portion of services net revenue is derived from offerings that have been deferred over a period of |

79

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

time, and, as a result, reported services net revenue growth rates will be different than reported product net revenue growth rates.

From a geographical perspective, net revenue generated by sales to customers in the Americas and APJ increased during the second quarter of Fiscal 2020 due to strong performance globally in CSG and VMware. Net revenue from sales to customers in EMEA decreased slightly during the second quarter of Fiscal 2020.

Net revenue generated by sales to customers in the Americas and EMEA increased during the first six months of Fiscal 2020 due to strong performance globally in CSG and VMware. Net revenue from sales to customers in APJ remained flat during the first six months of Fiscal 2020.

**Gross Margin**

During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, our gross margin increased 20% to $7.3 billion and 18% to $14.1 billion, respectively. During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, our gross margin percentage increased 460 basis points to 31.3% and 410 basis points to 31.2%, respectively. The increases in our gross margin percentage during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 were primarily attributable to a decrease in amortization of intangibles and purchase accounting adjustments, and a deflationary component cost environment.

Our gross margin for the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 included the impact of amortization of intangibles and purchase accounting adjustments of $0.6 billion and $1.2 billion, respectively. Excluding these costs, transaction-related expenses, stock-based compensation expense, and other corporate expenses, non-GAAP gross margin for the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 increased 13% to $8.0 billion and 10% to $15.4 billion, respectively, and non-GAAP gross margin percentage increased 340 basis points to 34.0% and 260 basis points to 33.9%, respectively. The increase in our non-GAAP gross margin were attributable to increases in gross margin across all three business units. The increases in our non-GAAP gross margin percentage were primarily due to higher gross margin percentages for both ISG and CSG which benefited from the deflationary component cost environment.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Products* — During the second quarter of Fiscal 2020, product gross margin increased 32% to $4.2 billion, and product gross margin percentage increased 560 basis points to 23.3%. The increases in both product gross margin and product gross margin percentage were primarily attributable to a decrease in amortization of intangibles and the deflationary cost environment. During the second quarter of Fiscal 2020, non-GAAP product gross margin increased 20% to $4.8 billion, and non-GAAP product gross margin percentage increased 430 basis points to 26.2%. The increases in product gross margin and non-GAAP product gross margin were driven primarily by increases in product revenue due to strength in sales of CSG commercial products and VMware software licenses. Product gross margin percentage and non-GAAP product gross margin percentage increased primarily as a result of higher product gross margin percentages for both ISG and CSG which benefited from the deflationary component cost environment. |

During the first six months of Fiscal 2020, product gross margin increased 26% to $7.9 billion, and product gross margin percentage increased 460 basis points to 22.6%. The increases in both product gross margin and product gross margin percentage were primarily attributable to a decrease in amortization of intangibles and transaction-related expenses and the deflationary cost environment. During the first six months of Fiscal 2020, non-GAAP product gross margin increased 14% to $9.0 billion, and non-GAAP product gross margin percentage increased 310 basis points to 25.7%. The increases in product gross margin and non-GAAP product gross margin were driven primarily by increases in product revenue due to strength in sales of CSG commercial products and VMware software licenses. Product gross margin percentage and non-GAAP product gross margin percentage increased primarily as a result of higher product gross margin percentages for both ISG and CSG which benefited from the deflationary component cost environment.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| *•* | *Services* — During the second quarter of Fiscal 2020, services gross margin increased 6% to $3.1 billion, and services gross margin percentage decreased 190 basis points to 59.0%. Services gross margin increased due to growth in services gross margin across all three business units, particularly in hardware warranty, hardware support and deployment, and software maintenance. The decrease in services gross margin percentage was attributable to a shift in mix to more CSG services offerings sold relative to ISG, particularly support and deployment. During the second quarter of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, services gross margin also benefited from a decrease in purchase accounting adjustments, which totaled $78 million and $162 million, respectively. Excluding these costs, transaction-related expenses, stock-based compensation expense, and other corporate expenses, non-GAAP services gross margin increased 4% to $3.2 billion, and non-GAAP services gross margin percentage decreased 190 basis points to 60.6%. |

80

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

During the first six months of Fiscal 2020, services gross margin increased 9% to $6.2 billion, and services gross margin percentage decreased 70 basis points to 59.8%. Services gross margin increased due to growth in services gross margin across all three business units, particularly in hardware support and deployment and software maintenance. The decrease in services gross margin percentage was attributable to a shift in mix to more CSG services offerings sold relative to ISG, particularly support and deployment. During the first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, services gross margin also benefited from a decrease in purchase accounting adjustments, which totaled $156 million and $332 million, respectively. Excluding these costs, transaction-related expenses, stock-based compensation expense, and other corporate expenses, non-GAAP services gross margin increased 6% to $6.5 billion, and non-GAAP services gross margin percentage decreased 110 basis points to 61.1%.

*Vendor Programs and Settlements*

Our gross margin is affected by our ability to achieve competitive pricing with our vendors and contract manufacturers, including through our negotiation of a variety of vendor rebate programs to achieve lower net costs for the various components we include in our products. Under these programs, vendors provide us with rebates or other discounts from the list prices for the components, which are generally elements of their pricing strategy. We account for vendor rebates and other discounts as a reduction in cost of net revenue. We manage our costs on a total net cost basis, which includes supplier list prices reduced by vendor rebates and other discounts.

The terms and conditions of our vendor rebate programs are largely based on product volumes and are generally negotiated either at the beginning of the annual or quarterly period, depending on the program. The timing and amount of vendor rebates and other discounts we receive under the programs may vary from period to period, reflecting changes in the competitive environment. We monitor our component costs and seek to address the effects of any changes to terms that might arise under our vendor rebate programs. Our gross margins for the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019 were not materially affected by any changes to the terms of our vendor rebate programs, as the amounts we received under these programs were generally stable relative to our total net cost. We are not aware of any significant changes to vendor pricing or rebate programs that may impact our results in the near term.

In addition, we have pursued legal action against certain vendors and are currently involved in negotiations with other vendors regarding their past pricing practices. We have negotiated settlements with some of these vendors and may have additional settlements in future periods. These settlements are allocated to our segments based on the relative amount of affected vendor products sold by each segment.

**Operating Expenses**

The following table presents information regarding our operating expenses for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | |  |  | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | | | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | | | | |  |  | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | | | | |
|  | **Dollars** | | |  | **% of Net Revenue** | |  | **% Change** | |  | **Dollars** | | |  | **% of Net Revenue** | |  | **Dollars** | | |  | **% of Net Revenue** | |  | **% Change** | |  | **Dollars** | | |  | **% of Net Revenue** | |
|  | (in millions, except percentages) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Operating expenses:* |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |
| Selling, general, and administrative | $ | 5,578 |  |  | 23.8 | % |  | 12 | % |  | $ | 4,961 |  |  | 21.7 | % |  | $ | 10,649 |  |  | 23.5 | % |  | 8 | % |  | $ | 9,905 |  |  | 22.4 | % |
| Research and development | 1,229 | |  |  | 5.3 | % |  | 5 | % |  | 1,175 | |  |  | 5.1 | % |  | 2,405 | |  |  | 5.3 | % |  | 6 | % |  | 2,262 | |  |  | 5.1 | % |
| Total operating expenses | $ | 6,807 |  |  | 29.1 | % |  | 11 | % |  | $ | 6,136 |  |  | 26.8 | % |  | $ | 13,054 |  |  | 28.8 | % |  | 7 | % |  | $ | 12,167 |  |  | 27.5 | % |
|  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |
| ***Other Financial Information*** | | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | |  |  | | |  |  | |
| Non-GAAP operating expenses | $ | 5,243 |  |  | 22.4 | % |  | 6 | % |  | $ | 4,958 |  |  | 21.4 | % |  | $ | 10,481 |  |  | 23.1 | % |  | 6 | % |  | $ | 9,851 |  |  | 22.1 | % |

81

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, total operating expenses increased 11% and 7%, respectively. Our operating expenses include the impact of purchase accounting, amortization of intangible assets, transaction-related expenses, stock-based compensation expense, and other corporate expenses. In aggregate, these items totaled $1.6 billion and $1.2 billion for the second quarter of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, respectively, and $2.6 billion and $2.3 billion for the first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, respectively. Excluding these costs, total non-GAAP operating expenses increased 6% for both the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020. The increases in operating expenses and non-GAAP operating expenses were primarily due to an increase in selling, general, and administrative expenses associated with our revenue growth and sales headcount.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| *•* | *Selling, General, and Administrative* — Selling, general, and administrative (“SG&A”) expenses increased 12% and 8%, respectively, during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020. The increases in SG&A expenses were primarily driven by investments in our go-to-market capabilities, including sales headcount, and higher performance-based compensation and commission costs. The increases in SG&A expenses also included Virtustream impairment charges during the second quarter of Fiscal 2020, which were partially offset by a decrease in amortization of intangible assets. |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| • | *Research and Development —*Research and development (“R&D”) expenses are primarily composed of personnel-related expenses related to product development. R&D expenses as a percentage of net revenue were approximately 5.3% and 5.1% for the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, respectively. As our industry continues to change and as the needs of our customers evolve, we intend to support R&D initiatives to innovate and introduce new and enhanced solutions into the market. |

We continue to make investments designed to enable growth, particularly in our sales force, marketing, and R&D, while balancing our efforts to drive cost efficiencies in the business. We also expect to continue to make investments in support of our own digital transformation to modernize and streamline our IT operations.

**Operating Income/Loss**

During the second quarter of Fiscal 2020, our operating income was $519 million compared to an operating loss of $13 million during the second quarter of Fiscal 2019. During the first six months of Fiscal 2020, our operating income was $1.1 billion compared to an operating loss of $166 million during the first six months of Fiscal 2019. The increases in our operating income for the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 were primarily attributable to an increase in operating income for CSG and a decrease in amortization of intangible assets. These benefits were partially offset by an increase in other corporate expenses, which primarily include Virtustream impairment charges.

Amortization of intangible assets and other corporate expenses that impacted our operating income totaled $1.8 billion and $1.6 billion for the second quarter of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, respectively, and $3.0 billion and 3.2 billion for the first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, respectively. Excluding these costs, the impact of purchase accounting, stock-based compensation expense, and transaction-related expenses, our non-GAAP operating income was $2.7 billion and $2.1 billion during the second quarter of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, respectively. During the first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, our non-GAAP operating income was $4.9 billion and $4.1 billion, respectively. The increases in our non-GAAP operating income for the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 were primarily due to an increase in operating income for CSG.

82

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**Interest and Other, Net**

The following table provides information regarding interest and other, net for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Interest and other, net:* |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |  |  | |  |
| Investment income, primarily interest | $ | 42 |  |  | $ | 85 |  |  | $ | 86 |  |  | $ | 163 |  |
| Gain on investments, net | 80 | |  |  | 139 | |  |  | 142 | |  |  | 246 | |  |
| Interest expense | (692 | | ) |  | (622 | | ) |  | (1,391 | | ) |  | (1,218 | | ) |
| Foreign exchange | (35 | | ) |  | (34 | | ) |  | (80 | | ) |  | (111 | | ) |
| Other | (25 | | ) |  | (23 | | ) |  | (80 | | ) |  | (5 | | ) |
| Total interest and other, net | $ | (630 | ) |  | $ | (455 | ) |  | $ | (1,323 | ) |  | $ | (925 | ) |

During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, the change in interest and other, net was unfavorable by $175 million and $398 million, respectively, primarily due to higher interest expense and a decrease in net gain on investments. To fund a portion of the cash consideration paid in the Class V transaction, we incurred additional debt and liquidated a significant amount of our investments. As a result, we expect higher interest expense and lower investment income to continue in Fiscal 2020. See Note 3 and Note 6 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report for further information regarding our investments and debt, respectively.

**Income and Other Taxes**

For the second quarter of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, our effective income tax rates were 3912.6% and 1.5%, respectively, on pre-tax losses of $111 million and $468 million, respectively. For the first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, our effective income tax rates were 1895.7% and 8.4%, respectively, on pre-tax losses of $254 million and $1.1 billion, respectively. The changes in our effective tax rates were primarily driven by discrete tax items and a change in our jurisdictional mix of income. During the first quarter of Fiscal 2020, we completed an intra-entity asset transfer of certain of our intellectual property to an Irish subsidiary, resulting in a discrete tax benefit of $405 million. During the second quarter of Fiscal 2020, our VMware business unit completed a similar transaction, resulting in a discrete tax benefit of $4.5 billion. The tax benefit for each intra-entity asset transfer was recorded as a deferred tax asset in the period of transaction and represents the book and tax basis difference on the transferred assets measured based on the applicable Irish statutory tax rate. The tax deductions for amortization of the assets will be recognized in the future and any amortization not deducted for tax purposes will be carried forward indefinitely under Irish Tax laws. We expect to be able to realize the deferred tax assets resulting from these intra-entity asset transfers. For the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, our effective tax rates include $273 million discrete tax expense related to certain foreign tax credits associated with U.S. Tax Reform.  Our effective tax rates for the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 also include $95 million of discrete tax benefits relating to Virtustream impairment charges. For the first six months of Fiscal 2019, our effective tax rate includes $154 million of discrete tax benefits resulting from the impact of our adoption of the new revenue recognition standard in the first quarter of Fiscal 2019.

The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017 (“U.S. Tax Reform”) was signed into law on December 22, 2017.  Among other things, U.S. Tax Reform lowers the U.S. corporate income tax rate to 21% from 35%, establishes a modified territorial system requiring a mandatory deemed repatriation tax on undistributed earnings of foreign subsidiaries, requires a minimum tax on certain future earnings generated by foreign subsidiaries while providing for future tax-free repatriation of earnings through a 100% dividends-received deduction, and places limitations on the deductibility of net interest expense. We anticipate that the U.S. Department of the Treasury and the Internal Revenue Service will continue to issue regulatory guidance clarifying certain provisions of U.S. Tax Reform.  When additional guidance is issued, we will recognize the related tax impact in the fiscal quarter of such issuance.

83

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

Our effective income tax rate can fluctuate depending on the geographic distribution of our worldwide earnings, as our foreign earnings are generally taxed at lower rates than in the United States. The differences between our effective income tax rate and the U.S. federal statutory rate of 21% principally result from the geographical distribution of income and differences between the book and tax treatment of certain items. In certain jurisdictions, our tax rate is significantly less than the applicable statutory rate as a result of tax holidays. The majority of our foreign income that is subject to these tax holidays and lower tax rates is attributable to Singapore, China, and Malaysia. A significant portion of these income tax benefits relates to a tax holiday that will be effective until January 31, 2029.  Our other tax holidays will expire in whole or in part during Fiscal 2022 through Fiscal 2030. Many of these tax holidays and reduced tax rates may be extended when certain conditions are met or may be terminated early if certain conditions are not met. As of August 2, 2019, we were not aware of any matters of non-compliance related to these tax holidays.

For further discussion regarding tax matters, including the status of income tax audits, see Note 11 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report.

**Net Income/Loss**

During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, net income was $4.2 billion and $4.6 billion, respectively, and net loss was $0.5 billion and $1.0 billion, respectively, during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2019. The increase in net income during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 was primarily attributable to an increase in tax benefit and, to a lesser extent, an increase in operating income, which was partially offset by an increase in interest and other, net expense.

Net income for the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019 included amortization of intangible assets, the impact of purchase accounting, transaction-related expenses, stock-based compensation expense, other corporate expenses, fair value adjustments on equity investments, and discrete tax items. Excluding these costs and the related tax impacts, non-GAAP net income was $1.8 billion and $3.0 billion, respectively, during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, and was $1.3 billion and $2.4 billion, respectively, during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2019. The increase in non-GAAP net income during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 was primarily attributable to an increase in operating income, which was partially offset by an increase in interest and other, net expense.

**Non-controlling Interests**

Net income or loss attributable to non-controlling interests consisted of net income or loss attributable to our non-controlling interests in VMware, Inc., Pivotal, and Secureworks. During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, net income attributable to non-controlling interests was $816 million and $852 million, respectively, and net income attributable to non-controlling interests was $38 million and $136 million, respectively, during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2019. The increase in net income attributable to non-controlling interests during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 was attributable to an increase in net income attributable to our non-controlling interest in VMware, Inc. For more information about our non-controlling interests, see Note 13 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report.

**Net Income (Loss) Attributable to Dell Technologies Inc.**

Net income (loss) attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. represents net income (loss) and an adjustment for non-controlling interests. During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, net income attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. was $3.4 billion and $3.7 billion, respectively, and net loss attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. was $0.5 billion and $1.1 billion, respectively, during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2019. The increase in net income attributable to Dell Technologies Inc. during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 was primarily attributable to an increase in net income for the period.

84

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**Business Unit Results**

Our reportable segments are based on the following business units: ISG, CSG, and VMware. A description of our three business units is provided under “Introduction.” See Note 18 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report for a reconciliation of net revenue and operating income by reportable segment to consolidated net revenue and consolidated operating income (loss), respectively.

**Infrastructure Solutions Group**

The following table presents net revenue and operating income attributable to ISG for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **% Change** |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **% Change** |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions, except percentages) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Net revenue:* |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |
| Servers and networking | $ | 4,437 |  |  | (12)% |  | $ | 5,061 |  |  | $ | 8,617 |  |  | (11)% |  | $ | 9,646 |  |
| Storage | 4,184 | |  |  | —% |  | 4,166 | |  |  | 8,206 | |  |  | (1)% |  | 8,248 | |  |
| Total ISG net revenue | $ | 8,621 |  |  | (7)% |  | $ | 9,227 |  |  | $ | 16,823 |  |  | (6)% |  | $ | 17,894 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |
| *Operating income:* |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |
| ISG operating income | $ | 1,050 |  |  | 4% |  | $ | 1,012 |  |  | $ | 1,893 |  |  | (3)% |  | $ | 1,951 |  |
| *% of segment net revenue* | *12.2* | | *%* |  |  |  | *11.0* | | *%* |  | *11.3* | | *%* |  |  |  | *10.9* | | *%* |

*Net Revenue* *—*During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, ISG net revenue decreased 7% and 6%, respectively, primarily due to a decrease in sales of servers and networking. Revenue from servers and networking decreased 12% and 11%, respectively, during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, driven by a decline in units sold of our PowerEdge servers due to a weaker demand environment. Certain competitive dynamics also contributed to lower server volumes, as we focused on profitability over net revenue growth. The impact of the lower volume of PowerEdge sales was partially mitigated by an increase in average selling prices due to the sale of servers with more robust compute capacity and higher memory and storage content, which was driven by customer demand for servers that enable big data analytics. Storage revenue remained flat during both the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020. We continue to make go-to-market investments and enhancements to our storage solutions offerings and expect that these investments will drive long-term improvements in the business. Component costs were deflationary in the aggregate for ISG during the first six months of Fiscal 2020, and we continue to monitor our pricing in response to changes in the component cost environment. We expect the aggregate ISG component cost environment to continue to be deflationary in the near term, but to a lesser degree relative to the first half of Fiscal 2020.

In ISG, we continue to see interest in flexible consumption models by our customers as they seek to build greater flexibility into their cost structures. We generally provide these solutions under multi-year contracts that typically result in recognition of revenue over the term of the arrangement. We expect these flexible consumption models will further strengthen our customer relationships and will build more predictable revenue streams over time.

From a geographical perspective, net revenue attributable to ISG was relatively flat in the Americas and EMEA, and decreased in APJ during the second quarter of Fiscal 2020. Net revenue attributable to ISG increased in EMEA, decreased slightly in the Americas, and decreased in APJ during the the first six months of Fiscal 2020.

*Operating Income* *—*During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, ISG operating income as a percentage of net revenue increased 120 basis points to 12.2% and 40 basis points to 11.3%, respectively, primarily as a result of an increase in ISG gross margin percentage due to higher average selling prices of servers and the deflationary cost environment as described above. The increase in ISG gross margin percentage was partially offset by an increase in operating expenses as a percentage of net revenue as we continue to make investments in go-to-market capabilities.

85

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**Client Solutions Group**

The following table presents net revenue and operating income attributable to CSG for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **% Change** |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | | **% Change** |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions, except percentages) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Net revenue:* |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |  |  | | |  | |  |  |  | | |
| Commercial | $ | 9,077 |  |  | 12% |  | $ | 8,109 |  |  | $ | 17,384 |  |  | | 12% |  | $ | 15,472 |  |
| Consumer | 2,671 | |  |  | (12)% |  | 3,019 | |  |  | 5,274 | |  |  | | (11)% |  | 5,927 | |  |
| Total CSG net revenue | $ | 11,748 |  |  | 6% |  | $ | 11,128 |  |  | $ | 22,658 |  |  | | 6% |  | $ | 21,399 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |  |  | | |  | |  |  |  | | |
| *Operating income:* |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |  |  | | |  | |  |  |  | | |
| CSG operating income | $ | 982 |  |  | 131% |  | $ | 425 |  |  | $ | 1,775 |  | — |  | 85% |  | $ | 958 |  |
| *% of segment net revenue* | *8.4* | | *%* |  |  |  | *3.8* | | *%* |  | *7.8* | | *%* |  | |  |  | *4.5* | | *%* |

*Net Revenue* *—*During both the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, CSG net revenue increased 6% primarily driven by strong execution by the business. CSG also benefited from the Microsoft Windows 10 operating system refresh cycle, which we expect to continue through at least the end of Fiscal 2020. During both the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, commercial revenue increased 12% due to continued strong demand for our commercial products across all product categories. Consumer revenue decreased 12% and 11%, respectively, during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 due to lower sales of notebooks, which was partially offset by higher average selling prices as we shifted our product mix to higher-priced consumer notebooks. The aggregate CSG component cost environment was deflationary in the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, and we expect deflationary conditions to continue in the near term, but to a lesser degree relative to the first half of Fiscal 2020.

From a geographical perspective, net revenue attributable to CSG increased in the Americas and APJ and decreased in EMEA during the second quarter of Fiscal 2020. Net revenue attributable to CSG increased in the Americas and APJ and increased to a lesser extent in EMEA in the first six months of Fiscal 2020.

*Operating Income* *—* During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, CSG operating income as a percentage of net revenue increased 460 basis points to 8.4% and 330 basis points to 7.8%, respectively. The increases were primarily due to lower component costs that positively impacted CSG gross margin and a shift in product mix to higher-margin product offerings.

86

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**VMware**

The following table presents net revenue and operating income attributable to VMware for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Three Months Ended** | | | | | | | | |  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **% Change** |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **% Change** | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions, except percentages) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *Net revenue:* |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| VMware net revenue | $ | 2,466 |  |  | 12% |  | $ | 2,194 |  |  | $ | 4,748 |  |  | 12 | % |  | $ | 4,222 |  |
|  |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| *Operating income:* |  | | |  |  |  |  | | |  |  | | |  |  | |  |  | | |
| VMware operating income | $ | 762 |  |  | 4% |  | $ | 736 |  |  | $ | 1,376 |  |  | 2 | % |  | $ | 1,349 |  |
| *% of segment net revenue* | *30.9* | | *%* |  |  |  | *33.5* | | *%* |  | *29.0* | | *%* |  |  | |  | *32.0* | | *%* |

*Net Revenue* *—* VMware net revenue primarily consists of revenue from the sale of software licenses under perpetual licenses, related software maintenance and support, training, consulting services, and hosted services. VMware net revenue for both the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 increased 12%, primarily due to growth in software license revenue and sales of software maintenance services. Software license revenue reflected broad-based growth across the product portfolio. Software maintenance revenue benefited from strong renewals, revenue recognized from maintenance contracts sold in prior periods, and new maintenance contracts sold during the current periods.

From a geographical perspective, approximately half of VMware net revenue during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 was generated by sales to customers in the United States. VMware net revenue for the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020 was positively affected by growth across U.S. and international markets.

*Operating Income* *—*During the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020, VMware operating income as a percentage of net revenue decreased 260 basis points to 30.9% and 300 basis points to 29.0%, respectively. The decrease was driven by an increase in operating expenses as a percentage of net revenue as the result of an increase in compensation-related expense associated with sales and sales support, primarily due to increased headcount, as well as to an increase in R&D expenses.

87

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**OTHER BALANCE SHEET ITEMS**

**Accounts Receivable**

We sell products and services directly to customers and through a variety of sales channels, including retail distribution. Our accounts receivable, net, was $11.6 billion and $12.4 billion as of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, respectively. We maintain an allowance for doubtful accounts to cover receivables that may be deemed uncollectible. The allowance for losses is based on a provision for accounts that are collectively evaluated based on historical bad debt experience as well as specific identifiable customer accounts that are deemed at risk. As of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, the allowance for doubtful accounts was $89 million and $85 million, respectively. Based on our assessment, we believe that we are adequately reserved for expected credit losses. We monitor the aging of our accounts receivable and continue to take actions to reduce our exposure to credit losses.

**Dell Financial Services**

Dell Financial Services and its affiliates (“DFS”) support Dell Technologies by offering and arranging various financing options and services for our customers globally, including through captive financing operations in North America, Europe, Australia, and New Zealand. DFS originates, collects, and services customer receivables primarily related to the purchase of our product, software, and service solutions. DFS further strengthens our customer relationships through its flexible consumption models, which enable us to offer our customers the option to pay over time and, in certain cases, based on utilization, to provide them with financial flexibility to meet their changing technological requirements. New financing originations were $2.0 billion and $1.9 billion for the second quarter of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, respectively, and $3.7 billion and $3.6 billion for the first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, respectively.

As of February 2, 2019, we adopted the new lease standard discussed in Note 1 and Note 2 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report. The adoption of the new lease standard did not result in a change to leases that commenced prior to adoption. For new leases that commenced subsequent to the adoption of the new lease standard, DFS accounts for the leases as sales-type leases, direct financing leases, or operating leases depending on lease classification guidance. Amounts due from lessees under sales-type leases or direct financing leases are recorded as part of financing receivables, with interest income recognized over the contract term. On commencement of sales-type leases, we typically qualify for up-front revenue recognition. On originations of operating leases, we record equipment under operating leases, classified as property, plant, and equipment, and recognize rental revenue and depreciation expense, classified as cost of net revenue, over the contract term. Direct financing leases under the new lease standard are immaterial.

As of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, our financing receivables, net were $8.8 billion and $8.6 billion, respectively. We maintain an allowance to cover expected financing receivable credit losses and evaluate credit loss expectations based on our total portfolio. For the second quarter of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, the principal charge-off rate for our total portfolio was 1.1% and 1.4%, respectively. For the first six months of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, the principal charge-off rate for our total portfolio was 1.0% and 1.3%, respectively. The credit quality of our financing receivables has improved in recent years due to an overall improvement in the credit environment and as the mix of high-quality commercial accounts in our portfolio has continued to increase. We continue to monitor broader economic indicators and their potential impact on future loss performance. We have an extensive process to manage our exposure to customer credit risk, including active management of credit lines and our collection activities. We also sell selected fixed-term financing receivables without recourse to unrelated third parties on a periodic basis, primarily to manage certain concentrations of customer credit exposure.  Based on our assessment of the customer financing receivables, we believe that we are adequately reserved.

88

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

We retain a residual interest in equipment leased under our lease programs. As of August 2, 2019 and February 1, 2019, the residual interest recorded as part of financing receivables was $639 million and $674 million, respectively. The amount of the residual interest is established at the inception of the lease based upon estimates of the value of the equipment at the end of the lease term using historical studies, industry data, and future value-at-risk demand valuation methods. On a quarterly basis, we assess the carrying amount of our recorded residual values for impairment. Generally, residual value risk on equipment under lease is not considered to be significant, because of the existence of a secondary market with respect to the equipment. The lease agreement also clearly defines applicable return conditions and remedies for non-compliance, to ensure that the leased equipment will be in good operating condition upon return. Model changes and updates, as well as market strength and product acceptance, are monitored and adjustments are made to residual values in accordance with the significance of any such changes. Our remarketing sales staff works closely with customers and dealers to manage the sale of lease returns and the recovery of residual exposure. No impairment losses were recorded related to residual assets during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020.

As of August 2, 2019, equipment under operating leases, net was $426 million and was immaterial as of February 1, 2019. The increase in equipment under operating leases, net is due to our adoption of the new lease standard and the elimination of the third-party residual value guarantee insurance in the lease classification test for sales-type leases. Based on triggering events, we assess the carrying amount of the equipment under operating leases recorded for impairment. No impairment losses were recorded related to such equipment during the second quarter and first six months of Fiscal 2020.

DFS offerings are initially funded through cash on hand at the time of origination, most of which is subsequently replaced with third-party financing. As a result, while the initial funding of financing receivables is reflected as an impact to cash flows from operations, this funding is largely subsequently offset by cash flows from financing. Additionally, as a result of our adoption of the new leasing standard on lessor accounting, the increase to future originations of operating leases results in a shift from financing receivables to capital expenditures, which benefits our cash flows provided by operating activities by the increase in capital expenditures being reported as cash flows used in investing activities.

See Note 4 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report for additional information about our financing receivables and the equipment under operating leases.

**Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

As of August 2, 2019, we had no off-balance sheet arrangements that have or are reasonably likely to have a current or future material effect on our financial condition or results of operations.

89

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**MARKET CONDITIONS, LIQUIDITY, AND CAPITAL COMMITMENTS**

**Market Conditions**

We regularly monitor economic conditions and associated impacts on the financial markets and our business. We consistently evaluate the financial health of our supplier base, carefully manage customer credit, diversify counterparty risk, and monitor the concentration risk of our cash and cash equivalents balances globally. We routinely monitor our financial exposure to borrowers and counterparties.

We monitor credit risk associated with our financial counterparties using various market credit risk indicators such as credit ratings issued by nationally recognized credit rating agencies and changes in market credit default swap levels. We perform periodic evaluations of our positions with these counterparties and may limit exposure to any one counterparty in accordance with our policies. We monitor and manage these activities depending on current and expected market developments.

We use derivative instruments to hedge certain foreign currency exposures. We use forward contracts and purchased options designated as cash flow hedges to protect against the foreign currency exchange rate risks inherent in our forecasted transactions denominated in currencies other than the U.S. dollar.  In addition, we primarily use forward contracts and may use purchased options to hedge monetary assets and liabilities denominated in a foreign currency.  See Note 7 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report for more information about our use of derivative instruments.

We are exposed to interest rate risk related to our variable-rate debt and investment portfolio. In the normal course of business, we follow established policies and procedures to manage this risk, including monitoring of our asset and liability mix. As a result, we do not anticipate any material losses from interest rate risk.

The impact of any credit adjustments related to our use of counterparties on our Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report has been immaterial.

**Liquidity and Capital Resources**

To support our ongoing business operations, we rely on operating cash flows as our primary source of liquidity. We monitor the efficiency of our balance sheet to ensure that we have adequate liquidity to support our strategic initiatives. In addition to internally generated cash, we have access to other capital sources to finance our strategic initiatives and fund growth in our financing operations. As of August 2, 2019, we had $9.2 billion of total cash and cash equivalents. Our strategy is to deploy capital from any potential source, whether internally generated cash or debt, depending on the adequacy and availability of that source of capital and whether it can be accessed in a cost-effective manner.

A significant portion of our income is earned in non-U.S. jurisdictions.  Prior to the enactment of U.S. Tax Reform as discussed above in “Results of Operations — Income and Other Taxes,” earnings available to be repatriated to the United States would be subject to U.S. federal income tax, less applicable foreign tax credits.  U.S. Tax Reform fundamentally changes the U.S. approach to taxation of foreign earnings to a modified territorial tax system, which generally allows companies to make distributions of non-U.S. earnings to the United States without incurring additional U.S. federal tax.  However, local and U.S. state taxes may still apply. We have provided for future tax liabilities on income earned in non-U.S. jurisdictions, except for foreign earnings that are considered indefinitely reinvested outside of the United States.

During the fourth quarter of Fiscal 2019, as discussed above in “Introduction — Class V Transaction,” we completed a transaction in which all issued and outstanding shares of our Class V Common Stock were exchanged for cash or shares of Class C Common Stock at the stockholder’s election. We paid a total of $14 billion of cash to holders of Class V Common Stock. To fund a majority of the cash payment to stockholders, VMware, Inc. declared a conditional $11 billion one-time special cash dividend (the “Special Dividend”), which was paid pro-rata to VMware, Inc. stockholders as of the dividend record date of December 27, 2018 and in connection with the completion of the Class V transaction. Our cash, cash equivalents, and investments declined significantly, commensurate with the cash required to fund this transaction.

90

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

VMware, Inc. has advised us that, following its payment of the Special Dividend, VMware, Inc. will remain committed to a balanced capital allocation policy through investment in its product and solutions offerings, acquisitions, and returning capital to its stockholders through share repurchases. As of August 2, 2019, $1.3 billion remained available for repurchases. During the first six months of Fiscal 2020, VMware, Inc. repurchased 5.7 million shares of its Class A common stock in the open market for approximately $1.0 billion. During the first six months of Fiscal 2019, VMware, Inc. did not repurchase any shares of its Class A common stock.

We funded a majority of the cash consideration paid in the Class V transaction from the $8.87 billion of the proceeds of the Special Dividend. The remaining amount of the cash consideration was primarily funded with $3.67 billion of proceeds from new senior secured term loans under our senior secured credit facilities and proceeds of a margin loan financing in an aggregate principal amount of $1.35 billion. See Note 6 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report for information about the debt we incurred to finance the Class V transaction.

The following table summarizes our cash and cash equivalents as well as our available borrowings as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| *Cash and cash equivalents, and available borrowings:* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents (a) | $ | 9,193 |  |  | $ | 9,676 |  |
| Remaining available borrowings under revolving credit facilities | 6,086 | |  |  | 5,586 | |  |
| Total cash, cash equivalents, and available borrowings | $ | 15,279 |  |  | $ | 15,262 |  |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (a) | Of the $9.2 billion of cash and cash equivalents as of August 2, 2019, $2.9 billion was held by VMware, Inc. |

Our revolving credit facilities include the Revolving Credit Facility and the China Revolving Credit Facility, which we renewed during the first quarter of Fiscal 2020. The Revolving Credit Facility and the China Revolving Credit Facility have maximum aggregate borrowings of $4.5 billion and $0.5 billion, respectively. Available borrowings under these facilities are reduced by draws on the facility and, under the Revolving Credit Facility, outstanding letters of credit. As of August 2, 2019, there were no borrowings outstanding under the facilities and remaining available borrowings totaled approximately $5.0 billion. We may regularly use our available borrowings from both our Revolving Credit Facility and our China Revolving Credit Facility on a short-term basis for general corporate purposes.

The VMware Revolving Credit Facility and the Pivotal Revolving Credit Facility have maximum aggregate borrowings of $1.0 billion and $100 million, respectively. None of the net proceeds of such borrowings will be made available to support the operations or satisfy any corporate purposes of Dell Technologies, other than the operations and corporate purposes of VMware, Inc., Pivotal, and their respective subsidiaries under the applicable facility. As of August 2, 2019, $1.0 billion was available under the VMware Revolving Credit Facility and $100 million was available under the Pivotal Revolving Credit Facility.

See Note 6 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report for additional information about each of the foregoing revolving credit facilities.

We believe that our current cash and cash equivalents, together with cash that will be provided by future operations and expected borrowings under our revolving credit facilities, will be sufficient over at least the next twelve months to fund our operations, debt service requirements and maturities, capital expenditures, share repurchases, and other corporate needs.

91

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

*Debt*

The following table summarizes our outstanding debt as of the dates indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **February 1, 2019** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| **Restricted Subsidiary Debt** |  | | |  |  | | |
| *Core debt:* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Senior Secured Credit Facilities and First Lien Notes | $ | 30,260 |  |  | $ | 32,720 |  |
| Unsecured Notes and Debentures | 1,352 | |  |  | 1,952 | |  |
| Senior Notes | 3,250 | |  |  | 3,250 | |  |
| EMC Notes | 3,000 | |  |  | 3,000 | |  |
| DFS allocated debt | (1,448 | | ) |  | (1,615 | | ) |
| Total core debt | 36,414 | |  |  | 39,307 | |  |
| *DFS related debt:* |  | | |  |  | | |
| DFS debt | 6,645 | |  |  | 5,929 | |  |
| DFS allocated debt | 1,448 | |  |  | 1,615 | |  |
| Total DFS related debt | 8,093 | |  |  | 7,544 | |  |
| Margin Loan and Other | 4,023 | |  |  | 3,388 | |  |
| **Unrestricted Subsidiary Debt** |  | | |  |  | | |
| VMware Notes | 4,000 | |  |  | 4,000 | |  |
| Other | 62 | |  |  | — | |  |
| Total unrestricted subsidiary debt | 4,062 | |  |  | 4,000 | |  |
| Total debt, principal amount | 52,592 | |  |  | 54,239 | |  |
| Carrying value adjustments | (670 | | ) |  | (718 | | ) |
| Total debt, carrying value | $ | 51,922 |  |  | $ | 53,521 |  |

The outstanding principal amount of our debt was $52.6 billion as of August 2, 2019, which included core debt of $36.4 billion. We define core debt as the total principal amount of our debt, less DFS related debt, our margin loan and other debt, and unrestricted subsidiary debt.

DFS related debt primarily represents debt from our securitization and structured financing programs. To fund expansion of the DFS business, we balance the use of the securitization and structured financing programs with other sources of liquidity. We approximate the amount of our debt used to fund the DFS business by applying a 7:1 debt to equity ratio to the sum of our financing receivables balance and equipment under our DFS operating leases, net. The debt to equity ratio used is based on the underlying credit quality of the assets. See Note 4 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report for more information about our DFS debt.

As of August 2, 2019, margin loan and other debt primarily consisted of the $4.0 billion Margin Loan Facility. In addition, as of August 2, 2019, other unrestricted subsidiary debt consisted of $62 million in finance leases entered into by VMware, Inc. during the second quarter of Fiscal 2020.

VMware, Inc., Pivotal, and their respective subsidiaries are unrestricted subsidiaries for purposes of the existing debt of Dell Technologies.  Neither Dell Technologies nor any of its subsidiaries, other than VMware, Inc., is obligated to make payment on the VMware Notes.  None of the net proceeds of the VMware Notes will be made available to support the operations or satisfy any corporate purposes of Dell Technologies, other than the operations and corporate purposes of VMware, Inc. and its subsidiaries.

92

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

Our requirements for cash to pay principal and interest on our debt increased significantly due to the borrowings we incurred to finance the EMC merger transaction, and to a lesser extent, the Class V transaction. We have made good progress in paying down core debt since the EMC merger transaction. We believe we will continue to be able to make our debt principal and interest payments, including the short-term maturities, from existing and expected sources of cash. Cash used for debt principal and interest payments may include short-term borrowings under our revolving credit facilities. We will continue to focus on paying down core debt. Related to our variable-rate debt, we could have variations in our future interest expense from potential fluctuations in LIBOR, or from possible fluctuations in the level of DFS debt required to meet future demand for customer financing. We or our affiliates or their related persons, at our or their sole discretion, may purchase, redeem, prepay, refinance, or otherwise retire any amount of our outstanding indebtedness under the terms of such indebtedness at any time and from time to time, in open market or negotiated transactions with the holders of such indebtedness or otherwise, as appropriate market conditions exist.

During the second quarter of Fiscal 2020, we repaid approximately $2.0 billion of debt, including $0.7 billion of our Term Loan A-2 Facility, $0.6 billion of our Term A-4 Facility, and $0.6 billion of our 5.875% senior notes due June 2019 upon maturity, and approximately $58 million of principal amortization under our term loan facilities.

See Note 6 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report for more information about our debt and our unrestricted subsidiaries.

**Cash Flows**

The following table contains a summary of our Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the periods indicated:

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | **Six Months Ended** | | | | | | |
|  | **August 2, 2019** | | |  | **August 3, 2018** | | |
|  | (in millions) | | | | | | |
| *Net change in cash from:* |  | | |  |  | | |
| Operating activities | $ | 3,962 |  |  | $ | 3,792 |  |
| Investing activities | (1,283 | | ) |  | (162 | | ) |
| Financing activities | (2,922 | | ) |  | (1,987 | | ) |
| Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents | (62 | | ) |  | (216 | | ) |
| Change in cash and cash equivalents | $ | (305 | ) |  | $ | 1,427 |  |

*Operating Activities* — Cash provided by operating activities was $4.0 billion for the first six months of Fiscal 2020 compared to $3.8 billion for the first six months of Fiscal 2019. The increase in operating cash flows during the first six months of Fiscal 2020 was attributable to improved profitability and continued working capital discipline.

DFS offerings are initially funded through cash on hand at the time of origination, most of which is subsequently replaced with third-party financing. As a result, while the initial funding of financing receivables is reflected as an impact to cash flows from operations, this funding impact is largely subsequently offset by cash flows from financing. Additionally, as a result of our adoption of the new leasing standard on lessor accounting in the first quarter of Fiscal 2020, the increase to future originations of operating leases results in a shift from financing receivables to capital expenditures, which benefits our cash flows provided by operating activities by the increase in capital expenditures being reported as cash flows used in investing activities. DFS new financing originations were $2.0 billion and $1.9 billion during the second quarter of Fiscal 2020 and Fiscal 2019, respectively. As of August 2, 2019, DFS had $8.8 billion of total net financing receivables and $426 million of equipment under DFS operating leases, net.

*Investing Activities —* Investing activities primarily consist of cash used to fund capital expenditures for property, plant, and equipment, which includes equipment under DFS operating leases, capitalized software development costs, strategic investments, and the maturities, sales, and purchases of investments. During the first six months of Fiscal 2020, cash used in investing activities was $1.3 billion and was primarily driven by capital expenditures and acquisitions of businesses, which were partially offset by net cash proceeds from the net sales of strategic investments. In comparison, cash used by investing activities was $162 million during the first six months of Fiscal 2019 and was primarily driven by capital expenditures, partially offset by net cash proceeds from the divestitures of businesses and by the net sales of investments.

93

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

*Financing Activities* — Financing activities primarily consist of the proceeds and repayments of debt, cash used to repurchase common stock, and proceeds from the issuance of common stock of subsidiaries. Cash used by financing activities of $2.9 billion during the first six months of Fiscal 2020 primarily consisted of repayments of debt and repurchases of common stock by our public subsidiaries. In comparison, cash used by financing activities of $2.0 billion during the first six months of Fiscal 2019 was primarily driven by repayments of debt, including an EMC senior note issued in the principal amount of $2.5 billion we repaid during the second quarter of Fiscal 2019.

**Capital Commitments**

*Capital Expenditures*— During the first six months of Fiscal 2020, we spent $1.1 billion on property, plant, and equipment, which included gross equipment under DFS operating leases of $455 million. During the first six months of Fiscal 2019, we spent $561 million on property, plant, and equipment. These expenditures were incurred in connection with our global expansion efforts and infrastructure investments made to support future growth, and, in Fiscal 2020, the funding of equipment under DFS operating leases. Product demand, product mix, and the use of contract manufacturers, as well as ongoing investments in operating and information technology infrastructure, influence the level and prioritization of our capital expenditures. Aggregate capital expenditures for Fiscal 2020, which will involve infrastructure investments, strategic initiatives, and funding our DFS leasing operations, are currently expected to total between $2.2 billion and $2.4 billion, of which approximately $1.0 billion relates to the property, plant, and equipment to be recognized under the new lease accounting standard.

*Purchase Obligations* — Purchase obligations are defined as contractual obligations to purchase goods or services that are enforceable and legally binding on us. These obligations specify all significant terms, including fixed or minimum quantities to be purchased; fixed, minimum, or variable price provisions; and the approximate timing of the transaction. Purchase obligations do not include contracts that may be canceled without penalty.

We utilize several suppliers to manufacture sub-assemblies for our products. Our efficient supply chain management allows us to enter into flexible and mutually beneficial purchase arrangements with our suppliers in order to minimize inventory risk. Consistent with industry practice, we acquire raw materials or other goods and services, including product components, by issuing to suppliers authorizations to purchase based on our projected demand and manufacturing needs. These purchase orders are typically fulfilled within 30 days and are entered into during the ordinary course of business in order to establish best pricing and continuity of supply for our production.

94

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**ITEM 3 — QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK**

For quantitative and qualitative disclosures about market risk affecting us, see “Part II — Item 7A — Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk” in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended February 1, 2019. Our exposure to market risks has not changed materially from that set forth in our Annual Report.

95

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**ITEM 4 — CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES**

This report includes the certifications of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer required by Rule 13a-14 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the “Exchange Act”). See Exhibits 31.1 and 31.2 filed with this report. This Item 4 includes information concerning the controls and control evaluations referred to in those certifications.

**Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures**

Disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Exchange Act) are designed to provide reasonable assurance that information required to be disclosed in reports filed or submitted under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized, and reported within the time periods specified in SEC rules and forms and that such information is accumulated and communicated to management, including the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosures.

In connection with the preparation of this report, our management, under the supervision and with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, conducted an evaluation of the effectiveness of the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures as of August 2, 2019. Based on that evaluation, our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer have concluded that our disclosure controls and procedures were effective at the reasonable assurance level as of August 2, 2019.

**Changes in Internal Control Over Financial Reporting**

There were no changes in our internal control over financial reporting during the fiscal quarter ended August 2, 2019 that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting. During the fiscal quarter ended May 3, 2019, we implemented new lease reporting systems and related controls to enable us to adopt the new accounting guidance set forth in ASC 842, “Leases.” Given the significance of these changes, we will continue to review and refine the systems, processes, and internal controls over leases, as appropriate.

96

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**PART II — OTHER INFORMATION**

**ITEM 1 — LEGAL PROCEEDINGS**

The information required by this item is incorporated herein by reference to the information set forth under the caption “Legal Matters” in Note 10 of the Notes to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report.

**ITEM 1A — RISK FACTORS**

In addition to the other information set forth in this report, the risks discussed in “Part I - Item 1A - Risk Factors” in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended February 1, 2019 could materially affect our business, operating results, financial condition, or prospects. The risks described in our Annual Report on Form 10-K and our subsequent SEC reports are not the only risks facing us.  There are additional risks and uncertainties not currently known to us or that we currently deem to be immaterial that also may materially adversely affect our business, operating results, financial condition, or prospects.

97

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**ITEM 2 — UNREGISTERED SALES OF EQUITY SECURITIES AND USE OF PROCEEDS**

**Sales of Unregistered Securities**

During the second quarter of Fiscal 2020, in addition to transactions previously reported, we issued to employees an aggregate of 9,411 shares of the Class C Common Stock for an aggregate purchase price of approximately $0.1 million pursuant to exercises of stock options granted under the Dell Inc. Amended and Restated 2002 Long-Term Incentive Plan. The foregoing transactions were effected without registration in reliance on the exemption from registration under the Securities Act of 1933 afforded by Rule 701 thereunder as transactions pursuant to compensatory benefit plans or contracts relating to compensation as provided under such rule.

During the second quarter of Fiscal 2020, in addition to transactions previously reported, we issued an aggregate of 72,729 shares of the Class C Common Stock upon conversion of the same number of shares of the Class A Common Stock. Under our certificate of incorporation, at any time and from time to time, any holder of Class A Common Stock has the right to convert all or any of the shares of Class A Common Stock held by such holder into shares of Class C Common Stock on a one-to-one basis. Each share of Class C Common Stock bears the same dividend and liquidation rights as one share of Class A Common Stock. The issuance of the shares of Class C Common Stock was made without registration in reliance on the exemption from registration under the Securities Act of 1933 afforded by Section 3(a)(9) thereof. No commission or other remuneration was paid or given directly or indirectly for soliciting the exchange of such securities.

**Purchases of Equity Securities**

The following table presents information with respect to our purchases of Class C Common Stock during the the second quarter of Fiscal 2020.

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | | | | | | | | | | |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| **Period** | **Total Number of Shares Purchased** | |  | **Weighted Average Price Paid per Share** | | |  | **Total Number of Shares Purchased as Part of Publicly Announced Programs** |  | **Approximate Dollar Value of Shares that May Yet Be Purchased Under the Programs** |
|  |  | |  |  | | |  |  |  |  |
| Repurchases from May 4, 2019 through May 31, 2019 | — |  |  | $ | — |  |  | NA |  | NA |
| Repurchases from June 1, 2019 through June 28, 2019 (1) | 29,659 |  |  | $ | 59.55 |  |  | NA |  | NA |
| Repurchases from June 29, 2019 through August 2, 2019 | — |  |  | $ | — |  |  | NA |  | NA |
| Total | 29,659 |  |  | $ | 59.55 |  |  | NA |  | NA |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  |  |
| (1) | Represents previously issued shares delivered to the Company to satisfy tax withholding obligations in connection with the vesting of employee restricted stock awards. |

98

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**ITEM 6 — INDEX TO EXHIBITS**

The Company hereby files or furnishes the exhibits listed below:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | | |
|  |  |  |
| **Exhibit**  **Number** |  | **Description** |
| [10.1](http://www.sec.gov/Archives/edgar/data/1571996/000157199619000032/a2013stockincentiveplanjul.htm)\* |  | [Dell Technologies Inc. 2013 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended and restated as of July  9, 2019 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Company’s Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission on July 11, 2019) (Commission File No.  001-37867).](http://www.sec.gov/Archives/edgar/data/1571996/000157199619000032/a2013stockincentiveplanjul.htm) |
| [31.1††](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\exhibit31108-02x19.htm) |  | [Certification of Michael S. Dell, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) or Rule 15d-14(a) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\exhibit31108-02x19.htm) |
| [31.2††](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\exhibit31208-02x19.htm) |  | [Certification of Thomas W. Sweet, Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer, pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) or Rule 15d-14(a) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\exhibit31208-02x19.htm) |
| [32.1†††](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\exhibit32108-02x19.htm) |  | [Certifications of Michael S. Dell, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, and Thomas W. Sweet, Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer, pursuant to Rule 13a-14(b) or Rule 15d-14(b) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\exhibit32108-02x19.htm) |
| 101 .INS†† |  | XBRL Instance Document - the instance document does not appear in the Interactive Data File because its XBRL tags are embedded within the Inline XBRL document. |
| 101 .SCH†† |  | Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document. |
| 101 .CAL†† |  | Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase Document. |
| 101 .DEF†† |  | Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase Document. |
| 101 .LAB†† |  | Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase Document. |
| 101 .PRE†† |  | Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document. |
| 104†† |  | Cover Page Interactive Data File - the cover page XBRL tags are embedded within the Inline XBRL document (included in Exhibit 101). |

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | | |
|  |  |  |
| †† |  | Filed with this report. |
| ††† |  | Furnished with this report. |
| \* |  | Management contracts or compensation plans or arrangements in which directors or executive officers participate. |

99

[Table of Contents](file:///D:\TMP\finance-docx\Dell\Dell-19.08.02-10-Q.html#s0671E6585FB65B4DA767E8B55F3AB5B6)

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | | |
|  |  |  |
|  | DELL TECHNOLOGIES INC. | |
|  |  |  |
|  | By: | /s/ MAYA MCREYNOLDS |
|  |  | Maya McReynolds |
|  |  | *Senior Vice President, Corporate Finance and* |
|  |  | *Chief Accounting Officer* |
|  |  | (On behalf of registrant and as principal accounting officer) |

Date: September 9, 2019

100